

Deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

Release 3.9 Issue 1 March 2021

Notice

While reasonable efforts have been made to ensure that the information in this document is complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya assumes no liability for any errors. Avaya reserves the right to make changes and corrections to the information in this document without the obligation to notify any person or organization of such changes.

Documentation disclaimer

"Documentation" means information published in varying mediums which may include product information, operating instructions and performance specifications that are generally made available to users of products. Documentation does not include marketing materials. Avaya shall not be responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of Documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by or on the express behalf of Avaya. End User agrees to indemnify and hold harmless Avaya, Avaya's agents, servants and employees against all claims, lawsuits, demands and judgments arising out of, or in connection with, subsequent modifications, additions or deletions to this documentation, to the extent made by End User.

Link disclaimer

Avaya is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked websites referenced within this site or Documentation provided by Avaya. Avaya is not responsible for the accuracy of any information, statement or content provided on these sites and does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. Avaya does not guarantee that these links will work all the time and has no control over the availability of the linked pages.

Warranty

Avaya provides a limited warranty on Avaya hardware and software. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language, as well as information regarding support for this product while under warranty is available to Avaya customers and other parties through the Avaya Support website: <u>https://support.avaya.com/helpcenter/</u> <u>getGenericDetails?detailId=C20091120112456651010</u> under the link

getGenericDetails?/detailid=C20091120112456651010 under the link "Warranty & Product Lifecycle" or such successor site as designated by Avaya. Please note that if You acquired the product(s) from an authorized Avaya Channel Partner outside of the United States and Canada, the warranty is provided to You by said Avaya Channel Partner and not by Avaya.

"Hosted Service" means an Avaya hosted service subscription that You acquire from either Avaya or an authorized Avaya Channel Partner (as applicable) and which is described further in Hosted SAS or other service description documentation regarding the applicable hosted service. If You purchase a Hosted Service subscription, the foregoing limited warranty may not apply but You may be entitled to support services in connection with the Hosted Service as described further in your service description documents for the applicable Hosted Service. Contact Avaya or Avaya Channel Partner (as applicable) for more information.

Hosted Service

THE FOLLOWING APPLIES ONLY IF YOU PURCHASE AN AVAYA HOSTED SERVICE SUBSCRIPTION FROM AVAYA OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER (AS APPLICABLE), THE TERMS OF USE FOR HOSTED SERVICES ARE AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEBSITE, HTTPS://SUPPORT.AVAYA.COM/LICENSEINFO UNDER THE LINK "Avaya Terms of Use for Hosted Services" OR SUCH SUCCESSOR SITE AS DESIGNATED BY AVAYA, AND ARE APPLICABLE TO ANYONE WHO ACCESSES OR USES THE HOSTED SERVICE. BY ACCESSING OR USING THE HOSTED SERVICE, OR AUTHORIZING OTHERS TO DO SO, YOU, ON BEHALF OF YOURSELF AND THE ENTITY FOR WHOM YOU ARE DOING SO (HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO INTERCHANGEABLY AS "YOU" AND "END USER"), AGREE TO THE TERMS OF USE. IF YOU ARE ACCEPTING THE TERMS OF USE ON BEHALF A COMPANY OR OTHER LEGAL ENTITY, YOU REPRESENT THAT YOU HAVE THE AUTHORITY TO BIND SUCH ENTITY TO THESE TERMS OF USE. IF YOU DO NOT HAVE SUCH AUTHORITY, OR IF YOU DO NOT WISH TO ACCEPT THESE TERMS OF USE, YOU MUST NOT ACCESS OR USE THE HOSTED SERVICE OR AUTHORIZE ANYONE TO ACCESS OR USE THE HOSTED SERVICE.

Licenses

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE TERMS AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEBSITE. HTTPS://SUPPORT.AVAYA.COM/LICENSEINFO UNDER THE LINK "AVAYA SOFTWARE LICENSE TERMS (Avaya Products)" OR SUCH SUCCESSOR SITE AS DESIGNATED BY AVAYA, ARE APPLICABLE TO ANYONE WHO DOWNLOADS, USES AND/OR INSTALLS AVAYA SOFTWARE, PURCHASED FROM AVAYA INC., ANY AVAYA AFFILIATE, OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER (AS APPLICABLE) UNDER A COMMERCIAL AGREEMENT WITH AVAYA OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER. UNLESS OTHERWISE AGREED TO BY AVAYA IN WRITING AVAYA DOES NOT EXTEND THIS LICENSE IF THE SOFTWARE WAS OBTAINED FROM ANYONE OTHER THAN AVAYA, AN AVAYA AFFILIATE OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER; AVAYA RESERVES THE RIGHT TO TAKE LEGAL ACTION AGAINST YOU AND ANYONE ELSE USING OR SELLING THE SOFTWARE WITHOUT A LICENSE. BY INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING OR USING THE SOFTWARE, OR AUTHORIZING OTHERS TO DO SO, YOU, ON BEHALF OF YOURSELF AND THE ENTITY FOR WHOM YOU ARE INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING OR USING THE SOFTWARE (HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO INTERCHANGEABLY AS "YOU" AND "END USER"), AGREE TO THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS AND CREATE A BINDING CONTRACT BETWEEN YOU AND AVAYA INC. OR THE APPLICABLE AVAYA AFFILIATE ("AVAYA").

Avaya grants You a license within the scope of the license types described below, with the exception of Heritage Nortel Software, for which the scope of the license is detailed below. Where the order documentation does not expressly identify a license type, the applicable license will be a Designated System License as set forth below in the Designated System(s) License (DS) section as applicable. The applicable number of licenses and units of capacity for which the license is granted will be one (1), unless a different number of licenses or units of capacity is specified in the documentation or other materials available to You. "Software" means computer programs in object code, provided by Avaya or an Avaya Channel Partner, whether as stand-alone products, pre-installed on hardware products, and any upgrades, updates, patches, bug fixes, or modified versions thereto. "Designated Processor" means a single stand-alone computing device. "Server" means a set of Designated Processors that hosts (physically or virtually) a software application to be accessed by multiple users. "Instance" means a single copy of the Software executing at a particular time: (i) on one physical machine; or (ii) on one deployed software virtual machine ("VM") or similar deployment.

License types

Designated System(s) License (DS). End User may install and use each copy or an Instance of the Software only: 1) on a number of Designated Processors up to the number indicated in the order; or 2) up to the number of Instances of the Software as indicated in the order, Documentation, or as authorized by Avaya in writing. Avaya may require the Designated Processor(s) to be identified in the order by type, serial number, feature key, Instance, location or other specific designation, or to be provided by End User to Avaya through electronic means established by Avaya specifically for this purpose.

Concurrent User License (CU). End User may install and use the Software on multiple Designated Processors or one or more Servers, so long as only the licensed number of Units are accessing and using the Software at any given time as indicated in the order, Documentation, or as authorized by Avaya in writing. A "Unit" means the unit on which Avaya, at its sole discretion, bases the pricing of its licenses and can be, without limitation, an agent, port or user, an email or voice mail account in the name of a person or corporate function (e.g., webmaster or helpdesk), or a directory entry in the administrative database utilized by the Software that permits one user to interface with the Software. Units may be linked to a specific, identified Server or an Instance of the Software.

Named User License (NU). End User may: (i) install and use each copy or Instance of the Software on a single Designated Processor or Server per authorized Named User (defined below); or (ii) install and use each copy or Instance of the Software on a Server so long as only authorized Named Users access and use the Software as indicated in the order, Documentation, or as authorized by Avaya in writing. "Named User", means a user or device that has been expressly authorized by Avaya to access and use the Software. At Avaya's sole discretion, a "Named User" may be, without limitation, designated by name, corporate function (e.g., webmaster or helpdesk), an e-mail or voice mail account in the name of a person or corporate function, or a directory entry in the administrative database utilized by the Software that permits one user to interface with the Software.

Shrinkwrap License (SR). End User may install and use the Software in accordance with the terms and conditions of the applicable license agreements, such as "shrinkwrap" or "clickthrough" license accompanying or applicable to the Software ("Shrinkwrap License") as indicated in the order, Documentation, or as authorized by Avaya in writing.

Heritage Nortel Software

"Heritage Nortel Software" means the software that was acquired by Avaya as part of its purchase of the Nortel Enterprise Solutions Business in December 2009. The Heritage Nortel Software is the software contained within the list of Heritage Nortel Products located at <u>https://support.avaya.com/LicenseInfo</u> under the link "Heritage Nortel Products" or such successor site as designated by Avaya. For Heritage Nortel Software, Avaya grants Customer a license to use Heritage Nortel Software provided hereunder solely to the extent of the authorized activation or authorized usage level, solely for the purpose specified in the Documentation, and solely as embedded in, for execution on, or for communication with Avaya equipment. Charges for Heritage Nortel Software may be based on extent of activation or use authorized as specified in an order or invoice.

Copyright

Except where expressly stated otherwise, no use should be made of materials on this site, the Documentation, Software, Hosted Service, or hardware provided by Avaya. All content on this site, the documentation, Hosted Service, and the product provided by Avaya including the selection, arrangement and design of the content is owned either by Avaya or its licensors and is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws including the sui generis rights relating to the protection of databases. You may not modify, copy, reproduce, republish, upload, post, transmit or distribute in any way any content, in whole or in part, including any code and software unless expressly authorized by Avaya. Unauthorized reproduction, transmission, dissemination, storage, and or use without the express written consent of Avaya can be a criminal, as well as a civil offense under the applicable law.

Virtualization

The following applies if the product is deployed on a virtual machine. Each product has its own ordering code and license types. Unless otherwise stated, each Instance of a product must be separately licensed and ordered. For example, if the end user customer or Avaya Channel Partner would like to install two Instances of the same type of products, then two products of that type must be ordered.

Third Party Components

"Third Party Components" mean certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Software or Hosted Service may contain software (including open source software) distributed under third party agreements ("Third Party Components"), which contain terms regarding the rights to use certain portions of the Software ("Third Party Terms"). As required, information regarding distributed Linux OS source code (for those products that have distributed Linux OS source code) and identifying the copyright holders of the Third Party Components and the Third Party Terms that apply is available in the products, Documentation or on Avaya's website at: https:// support.avaya.com/Copyright or such successor site as designated by Avaya. The open source software license terms provided as Third Party Terms are consistent with the license rights granted in these Software License Terms, and may contain additional rights benefiting You, such as modification and distribution of the open source software. The Third Party Terms shall take precedence over these Software License Terms, solely with respect to the applicable Third Party Components to the extent that these Software License Terms impose greater restrictions on You than the applicable Third Party Terms

The following applies only if the H.264 (AVC) codec is distributed with the product. THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL USE OF A CONSUMER OR OTHER USES IN WHICH IT DOES NOT RECEIVE REMUNERATION TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE <u>HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM</u>.

Service Provider

THE FOLLOWING APPLIES TO AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER'S HOSTING OF AVAYA PRODUCTS OR SERVICES. THE PRODUCT OR HOSTED SERVICE MAY USE THIRD PARTY COMPONENTS SUBJECT TO THIRD PARTY TERMS AND REQUIRE A SERVICE PROVIDER TO BE INDEPENDENTLY LICENSED DIRECTLY FROM THE THIRD PARTY SUPPLIER. AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER'S HOSTING OF AVAYA PRODUCTS MUST BE AUTHORIZED IN WRITING BY AVAYA AND IF THOSE HOSTED PRODUCTS USE OR EMBED CERTAIN THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO MICROSOFT SOFTWARE OR CODECS, THE AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER IS REQUIRED TO INDEPENDENTLY OBTAIN ANY APPLICABLE LICENSE AGREEMENTS, AT THE AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER'S EXPENSE, DIRECTLY FROM THE APPLICABLE THIRD PARTY SUPPLIER.

WITH RESPECT TO CODECS, IF THE AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER IS HOSTING ANY PRODUCTS THAT USE OR EMBED THE H.264 CODEC OR H.265 CODEC, THE AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER ACKNOWLEDGES AND AGREES THE AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY AND ALI RELATED FEES AND/OR ROYALTIES. THE H.264 (AVC) CODEC IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LÍCENSE FOR THE PERSONAL USE OF A CONSUMER OR OTHER USES IN WHICH IT DOES NOT RECEIVE REMUNERATION TO: (I) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (II) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ÈNCODED BÝ A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION FOR H.264 (AVC) AND H.265 (HEVC) CODECS MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP:// WWW.MPEGLA.COM

Compliance with Laws

You acknowledge and agree that it is Your responsibility for complying with any applicable laws and regulations, including, but not limited to laws and regulations related to call recording, data privacy, intellectual property, trade secret, fraud, and music performance rights, in the country or territory where the Avaya product is used.

Preventing Toll Fraud

"Toll Fraud" is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party (for example, a person who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf). Be aware that there can be a risk of Toll Fraud associated with your system and that, if Toll Fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

Avaya Toll Fraud intervention

If You suspect that You are being victimized by Toll Fraud and You need technical assistance or support, call Technical Service Center Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at +1-800-643-2353 for the United States and Canada. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support website: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u> or such successor site as designated by Avaya.

Security Vulnerabilities

Information about Avaya's security support policies can be found in the Security Policies and Support section of <u>https://support.avaya.com/security</u>.

Suspected Avaya product security vulnerabilities are handled per the Avaya Product Security Support Flow (<u>https://support.avaya.com/css/P8/documents/100161515</u>).

Downloading Documentation

For the most current versions of Documentation, see the Avaya Support website: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u>, or such successor site as designated by Avaya.

Contact Avaya Support

See the Avaya Support website: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u> for product or Hosted Service notices and articles, or to report a problem with your Avaya product or Hosted Service. For a list of support telephone numbers and contact addresses, go to the Avaya Support website: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u> (or such successor site as designated by Avaya), scroll to the bottom of the page, and select Contact Avaya Support.

Trademarks

The trademarks, logos and service marks ("Marks") displayed in this site, the Documentation, Hosted Service(s), and product(s) provided by Avaya are the registered or unregistered Marks of Avaya, its affiliates, its licensors, its suppliers, or other third parties. Users are not permitted to use such Marks without prior written consent from Avaya or such third party which may own the Mark. Nothing contained in this site, the Documentation, Hosted Service(s) and product(s) should be construed as granting, by implication, estoppel, or otherwise, any license or right in and to the Marks without the express written permission of Avaya or the applicable third party.

Avaya is a registered trademark of Avaya Inc.

All non-Avaya trademarks are the property of their respective owners. ${\sf Linux}^{\circledast}$ is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Contents

Purpose. 9 Change history. 9 Chapter 2: Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway overview. 11 New in this release 11 Solution architecture. 12 Topology diagram. 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data centers. 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data center. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Planning checklist. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Virtual ias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versio	Chapter 1: Introduction	9
Change history. 9 Chapter 2: Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway overview. 11 New in this release. 11 Solution architecture. 12 Topology diagram. 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 17 centers. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption. 20 Interoperability. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Configuration worksheet. 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33	Purpose	9
Chapter 2: Avaya Aura® Web Gateway overview 11 New in this release 11 Solution architecture 12 Topology diagram 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 19 Data encryption 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required FQDNs and certificates 29 Vitual machine requirements. 30 Vitual disk volume specifications. 30 Vitual alias commands. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 38 sys versions command. 38 sys seconfig command. 38 System layer commands. 36 System layer command	Change history	9
New in this release. 11 Solution architecture. 12 Topology diagram. 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signalling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data centers. 16 Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data centers. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption. 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual machine requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys versions command. 38 <td< td=""><td>Chapter 2: Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway overview</td><td>. 11</td></td<>	Chapter 2: Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway overview	. 11
Solution architecture 12 Topology diagram. 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data centers. 16 Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data centers. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption. 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 Sys versions command. 38 Sys versions command. 32 <td>New in this release</td> <td>. 11</td>	New in this release	. 11
Topology diagram. 13 Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist. 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMWare software requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 38 sys ve	Solution architecture	. 12
Geographical distribution overview. 15 General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 centers. 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near different data 16 centers. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption. 20 Interoperability. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required skills and knowledge. 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 30 Resource profile specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 37 sys versions command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys versions command. 42 passwdru	Topology diagram	. 13
General geographical distribution topology. 15 Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 16 Signaling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 18 Push notifications 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required skills and knowledge 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 38 sys versions command. 42 passwdrul	Geographical distribution overview	. 15
Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data 16 Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data 18 Center. 18 Push notifications. 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Pequired skills and knowledge. 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 30 Virtual dias commands. 34 System layer commands. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys working command. 38 sys working command. 34 System layer commands. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys survengt command. 45 Data encryption commands. 47 <td>General geographical distribution topology</td> <td>. 15</td>	General geographical distribution topology	. 15
centers 16 Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data center 18 Push notifications 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability 21 Product compatibility 21 Web browser requirements 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process 23 Configuration worksheet 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist 26 Required skills and knowledge 28 Required skills and knowledge 28 Virtual machine requirements 30 VMware software requirements 30 Virtual disk volume specifications 30 Virtual disk volume specifications 32 External load balancer requirements 33 Linux alias commands 34 System layer commands 38 sys versions command 38 sys volingt command 38 sys volingt command 42 passwdrules command 45 Data encryption commands 47 Characters supported for	Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data	_
Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data center. 18 Push notifications 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability 21 Product compatibility 21 Web browser requirements 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process 23 Configuration worksheet 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Planning checklist 26 Required FQDNs and certificates 29 Virtual machine requirements 30 VMware software requirements 30 Virtual disk volume specifications 32 External load balancer requirements 33 Linux alias commands 34 System layer commands 36 sys versions command 38 sys volingt command 38 sys workingt command 34 System layer command 38 sys workingt command 38 sys workingt command 38 sys workingt command 34 Data encryption commands 47 Characters supported for Avaya	centers	. 16
center.18Push notifications.19Data encryption20Interoperability.21Product compatibility.21Web browser requirements.22Chapter 3: Deployment process.23Configuration worksheet.23Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation.26Planning checklist.26Required skills and knowledge.28Required skills and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements.30VMware software requirements.30Virtual machine requirements.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.38sys versions command.38sys versions command.38sys sencoreig command.42passwdrules command.42passwdrules command.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data	
Push notifications 19 Data encryption 20 Interoperability 21 Product compatibility 21 Web browser requirements 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process 23 Configuration worksheet 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation 26 Pauring checklist 26 Required skills and knowledge 28 Required FQDNs and certificates 29 Virtual machine requirements 30 VMware software requirements 30 Resource profile specifications 32 Linux alias commands 33 Linux alias commands 34 System layer commands 36 sys versions command 38 sys volingt command 38 sys volingt command 38 sys serveringt command 38 sys workid command 45 Data encryption commands 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords 48	center	. 18
Data encryption20Interoperability21Product compatibility.21Web browser requirements22Chapter 3: Deployment process23Configuration worksheet23Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation26Planning checklist26Required skills and knowledge28Required FQDNs and certificates29Virtual machine requirements30VMware software requirements30Virtual disk volume specifications30Virtual disk volume specifications32External load balancer requirements33Linux alias commands36sys secconfig command37sys versions commands36sys versions command38sys versions command38sys versions command42passwdrules commands47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords48	Push notifications	. 19
Interoperability. 21 Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required skills and knowledge. 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 34 sys versions command. 38 sys volingt command. 38 sys secconfig command. 38 sys servengt command. 42 passwdrules command. 45 Data encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Data encryption	. 20
Product compatibility. 21 Web browser requirements. 22 Chapter 3: Deployment process. 23 Configuration worksheet. 23 Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation. 26 Planning checklist. 26 Required skills and knowledge. 28 Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 38 sys versions command. 38 sys sy succomfig command. 34 System layer command. 34 System layer command. 34 sys versions command. 38 sys sy workit command. 38 sys sy succomfig command. 34 System layer command. 34 System layer command. 38 sys succomfig command. 38	Interoperability	21
Web browser requirements.22Chapter 3: Deployment process.23Configuration worksheet.23Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation.26Planning checklist.26Required skills and knowledge.28Required FQDNs and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements.30VMware software requirements.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.38sys versions command.38sys sencvengt command.38sys sencengt command.42passwdrules commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Product compatibility	. 21
Chapter 3: Deployment process.23Configuration worksheet.23Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation26Planning checklist.26Required skills and knowledge.28Required FQDNs and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements.30VMware software requirements.30Virtual disk volume specifications.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.38sys versions command.38sys sencvengt command.38sys serconfig command.42passwdrules commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Web browser requirements	22
Configuration worksheet.23Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation26Planning checklist26Required skills and knowledge28Required FQDNs and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements30VMware software requirements.30Virtual disk volume specifications.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.38sys versions command.38sys sencompt command.38sys serconfig command.38sys serconfig command.34Data encryption commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Chapter 3: Deployment process	. 23
Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation26Planning checklist26Required skills and knowledge28Required FQDNs and certificates29Virtual machine requirements30VMware software requirements30Resource profile specifications30Virtual disk volume specifications32External load balancer requirements33Linux alias commands34System layer commands36sys versions command37sys versions command38sys volingt command38sys sencemgt commands42passwdrules commands47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords48	Configuration worksheet	23
Planning checklist.26Required skills and knowledge.28Required FQDNs and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements.30VMware software requirements.30Resource profile specifications.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.37sys versions command.38sys volmgt command.38sys workingt command.42passwdrules commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation	26
Required skills and knowledge.28Required FQDNs and certificates.29Virtual machine requirements.30VMware software requirements.30Resource profile specifications.30Virtual disk volume specifications.32External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys versions command.37sys versions command.38sys volmgt command.38sys secconfig command.38sys versions command.38sys versions command.34Data encryption commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura® Web Gateway passwords.48	Planning checklist	26
Required FQDNs and certificates. 29 Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys versions command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 42 passwdrules command. 45 Data encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Required skills and knowledge	28
Virtual machine requirements. 30 VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys secconfig command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 42 passwdrules commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Required FODNs and certificates	29
VMware software requirements. 30 Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys secconfig command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys secvengt command. 34 Data encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Virtual machine requirements	30
Resource profile specifications. 30 Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys secconfig command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 42 passwdrules command. 45 Data encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	VMware software requirements	30
Virtual disk volume specifications. 32 External load balancer requirements. 33 Linux alias commands. 34 System layer commands. 36 sys secconfig command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys secconfig command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 42 passwdrules command. 45 Data encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Resource profile specifications	30
External load balancer requirements.33Linux alias commands.34System layer commands.36sys secconfig command.37sys versions command.38sys volmgt command.38sys smcvemgt command.42passwdrules command.45Data encryption commands.47Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords.48	Virtual disk volume specifications.	. 32
Linux alias commands	External load balancer requirements	33
System layer commands. 36 sys secconfig command. 37 sys versions command. 38 sys volmgt command. 38 sys smcvemgt command. 38 passwdrules command. 42 pata encryption commands. 47 Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords. 48	Linux alias commands.	34
sys secconfig command	System laver commands.	. 36
sys versions command	sys secconfig command	37
sys volmgt command	sys versions command	38
sys smcvemgt command	sys volmat command	38
passwdrules command	sys smcvemat command	42
Data encryption commands	passwdrules command	45
Characters supported for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords	Data encryption commands	47
	Characters supported for Avava Aura [®] Web Gateway passwords	48
Chapter 5: Initial setup for VMware and AWS deployments 49	Chapter 5: Initial setup for VMware and AWS deployments	49

Deployment process checklist	49
VMware deployments	51
Obtaining the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway OVA file	51
OVA deployment	51
Amazon Web Services deployments	57
Signing in to the AWS Management console	58
Configuring AWS details using the AWS CLI	58
Creating a key pair	58
OVA to AMI conversion	59
Creating CloudFormation templates	62
Deploying a single-node CloudFormation stack	63
AWS cluster deployments	65
Creating a hybrid cloud for client access	70
Configuring on-premise DNS resolution of VPC addresses	71
Logging in to the EC2 instance	72
Completing the first-login configuration	72
Software-only deployments	73
Software-only deployment in VMware-based virtualization environment	74
Software-only deployment on Amazon Web Services	85
Enabling FIPS mode	94
Disabling FIPS mode	95
Enabling additional STIG hardening	96
Disabling additional STIG hardening	96
Uninstalling the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway	97
Chapter 6: Avava Aura [®] Web Gateway setup	98
Installing the Avava Aura [®] Web Gateway	98
Unexpected characters in the /etc/hosts file on a localhost line	101
Performing a silent installation	102
Seed node replacement configuration	103
Installing additional nodes to create a cluster	104
Configuring RSA public and private keys for SSH connections in a cluster	107
Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway initial configuration settings	108
Front-end host, System Manager, and certificate configuration	109
LDAP configuration	112
Cluster configuration	127
Virtual IP configuration options	128
Advanced configuration.	129
Changing the Cassandra user name and password	130
Changing the default password for automatic backups	131
Starting services using a command line	131
Configuring OAMP to use Linux account credentials on the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway	
administration portal	132
Chapter 7: Global FQDN configuration	133

DNS configuration	133
Configuring the front-end FQDN	133
Avaya Meetings Server configuration for single FQDN deployments	134
Configuring Avaya Workplace Client conference control	134
Configuring Web Collaboration	135
Chapter 8: System Manager, Avaya Aura [®] Device Services, Media Server, and Avaya	
Meetings Server configurations	136
Adding the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway to System Manager	136
Configuring SIP Trunks for the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway on System Manager	137
Serviceability agents	138
Configuring a registration expiration timer	140
Configuring Avaya Aura [®] Media Server in System Manager	140
Configuring Avaya Aura [®] Media Server settings	141
Configuring the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway on Avaya Aura [®] Device Services	143
Uploading clients to the web deployment service	143
Configuring the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway on Avaya Meetings Server	144
Route configuration for an external load balancer	145
Chapter 9: Avava Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration	147
Avava Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration checklist	147
Reverse proxy configuration	148
Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment	148
Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment	149
Prerequisites	149
Checklist for creating a TLS server profile for reverse proxy in a single FQDN deployment.	150
Checklist for creating TLS server profiles for reverse proxy in a multiple FQDN deployment	151
Certificate Authority configuration checklist	152
Enabling web socket support	153
Configuring external traffic rules in a single FQDN for all services deployment	153
Configuring internal traffic rules in a single FQDN for all services deployment	155
Configuring external traffic rules in a multiple FQDN deployment	157
External client access configuration	159
External client access configuration checklist	159
Checklist for creation of a TLS server profile for a management interface	160
Configuring Avaya SBCE load monitoring	161
Adding Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway	162
Adding Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to Avaya Meetings Server	
Management	163
WebRTC client side TURN configuration	164
External native clients media configuration	168
Certificate setup	176
Creating a certificate signing request on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise	176
Signing certificates with the System Manager CA	177
Installing a certificate and a key	178

Installing the Avaya Meetings Management CA certificate to Avaya SBCE	. 180
Installing a CA certificate on Avaya SBCE	. 180
TLS client and server profiles setup	. 181
Creating a TLS server profile	. 181
Creating a TLS client profile	. 181
Configuring Avaya SBCE network interfaces	182
Chapter 10: Resources	. 183
Documentation	. 183
Finding documents on the Avaya Support website	. 184
Avaya Documentation Center navigation	. 185
Training	. 186
Viewing Avaya Mentor videos	. 186
Support	. 187
Using the Avaya InSite Knowledge Base	. 187
Appendix A: Certificate configuration using the configuration utility	. 188
Generating Certificate Signing Requests	. 188
Getting certificates signed by the third-party CA	. 189
Applying third-party signed certificates to the Avaya Aura Web Gateway	. 190
Adding third-party root CA certificates to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway	. 191
Creating a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using OpenSSL	. 192
Signing identity certificates for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway using third-party CA certificates	193
Generating an identity certificate chain	. 194
Configuring System Manager to trust third-party root CA certificates	. 195
Creating a client certificate	. 196
Importing client certificates into web browsers	. 197
Glossary	. 199

Chapter 1: Introduction

Purpose

This document provides checklists and procedures for planning, installation, and configuration of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. It is intended for customer installers and administrators.

😵 Note:

This document does not describe SDK developer applications.

After you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, see *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway* for administration and maintenance information. You can also find information about managing Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) and push notification services in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Change history

This section describes the major changes made in this document:

Issue	Date	Summary of changes	
Release 3.9, Issue 1	March 2021	 Updated the list of supported VMware versions in <u>VMware</u> software requirements on page 30. 	
		 Indicated that virtual machine resource requirements also apply to software-only deployments in <u>Resource profile specifications for</u> <u>Avaya Aura Web Gateway on VMware</u> on page 30. 	
		 Added <u>Characters supported for Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> passwords on page 48. 	
		 Added information about software-only deployment options to <u>Deployment process checklist</u> on page 49. 	
		 Updated the title of <u>Converting the imported OVA to AMI</u> on page 61. 	
		 Updated steps in <u>Creating CloudFormation templates</u> on page 62. 	

Issue	Date	Summary of changes
		 Added procedures for installing Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application under <u>Software-only deployments</u> on page 73.
		 Indicated that Cassandra internode encryption must be enabled if FIPS is enabled when installing Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in <u>Installing the Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 98 and <u>Installing additional nodes to create a cluster</u> on page 104.
		 Indicated that the Cassandra default password must be changed after Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation in <u>Installing the</u> <u>Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 98 and <u>Installing additional</u> <u>nodes to create a cluster</u> on page 104.
		Added <u>Unexpected characters in the /etc/hosts file on a localhost</u> <u>line</u> on page 101.
		 Added <u>Changing the Cassandra user name and password</u> on page 130.
		 Added <u>Changing the default password for automatic backups</u> on page 131.
		 Indicated that enabling TURN on the client side is the preferred option in <u>Configuring Avaya Aura Media Server settings</u> on page 141.
		 Indicated that the web administration portal must be used to manage System Manager certificates in <u>Certificate setup</u> on page 176 and <u>Certificate configuration using the configuration</u> <u>utility</u> on page 188.

Chapter 2: Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway overview

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server acts as a gateway to Avaya Aura[®] clients and applications utilizing WebRTC signaling and media. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway also provides the push notification service, enabling clients to receive incoming call alerts and other notifications from the Apple Push Notification service (APNs).

You can deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway through Amazon Web Services (AWS), VMware, or Avaya Virtualization Platform.

You can deploy the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway in the following environments:

- Avaya Aura[®] (Team Engagement)
- Avaya Aura[®] and Conferencing (Team Engagement and Conferencing)

To access conferencing tools, such as Avaya Meetings Server, your deployment must include Conferencing.

Note:

An Over-The-Top (OTT), or Conferencing-only, deployment option is available, but it is not described in this document. The Conferencing-only option follows a different deployment process. For more information, see *Deploying Avaya Meetings Server*.

New in this release

The following is a summary of new functionality that has been added to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in Release 3.9:

Software-only installation

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway Release 3.9 supports software-only installation. In software-only deployments, you must provide and configure the operating system for use with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway supports VMware and AWS virtual environments for software-only installation.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6 support

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway now uses Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6.

Performance metrics dashboard

You can now review various performance metrics and system health indicators, such as CPU or memory usage, on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal.

Automatic backup

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway creates backups of configuration files and user data automatically on a weekly basis. You can modify the default automatic backup settings from the web administration portal.

Scheduled log collection

You can now enable a specific logging level on a temporary basis for a specified time period. After the specified time period expires, Avaya Aura[®] Device Services switches back to the original log level.

Security enhancements

To ensure the secure processing of user data and reduce security vulnerabilities, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway now supports the following features:

- The single-user mode of the RHEL operating system is now password-protected.
- Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway now enforces default password policies for all human-user accounts.

IWA multidomain support

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway now supports IWA for multiple domains. You can now configure multiple active directories to use IWA capabilities.

Solution architecture

This section provides a graphical representation of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployment architecture.



Figure 1: Avaya Workplace Client and Conferencing deployment topology

Topology diagram

This section provides a graphical representation of the Team Engagement + Conferencing deployment model topology.



For detailed information about ports, go to <u>https://support.avaya.com/security</u>, scroll down, and click **Avaya Product Port Matrix Documents**. Navigate to the required solution component section and then click on the appropriate Port Matrix document for the release to open it.

Geographical distribution overview

In a geographically distributed system, resources are deployed in multiple data centers to reduce media delays. For this purpose, the following components are deployed in each data center:

- Avaya Aura[®] Media Server
- Avaya Aura[®] Session Border Controller
- Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway
- Web Collaboration Server
- Avaya Aura[®] Session Manager
- Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager
- Avaya Aura[®] Device Services

In a geographically distributed system, you must also install the following two components:

- Global Server Load Balancing (GSLB), which provides different routes and addresses based on the location of the client.
- Load balancer, which balances traffic between two or more Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes, which may be located in the same data center or in different data centers.

Avaya Aura[®] Session Manager and Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager are important for call routing. To optimize media delays for point-to-point calls, deploy these components in a distributed manner across your data centers. The way in which these components are geographically distributed is outside the scope of this document. For more information about configuring Session Manager and Communication Manager, see *Administering Avaya Aura[®] Session Manager* and *Administering Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager*.

For more information about configuring a geographically distributed system, see the list of tasks for multiple data centers in <u>Configuration worksheet</u> on page 23.

General geographical distribution topology

In this topology example, there are two data centers with one Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in each data center. For simplicity, System Manager is deployed in Data Center 1 (DC1), while Session Manager, Communication Manager, and Avaya Aura[®] Device Services are deployed in all data centers.



Signaling and media path topology when clients are located in or near different data centers

In the following topology example, there are two data centers with one Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in each data center. Clients are located in different data centers outside of the firewall and registered on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway to receive calls. When one client makes a call to the other, the call follows the following flow:

- 1. Both clients log in to the corresponding Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway and activate the call service.
 - a. A client in data center 1 (DC1) gets the address of the DC1 load balancer and communicates with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployed on that data center. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway registers the client to the corresponding Session Manager deployed on DC1.

- b. A client in data center 2 (DC2) gets the address of the DC2 load balancer and communicates with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployed on that data center. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway registers the client to the corresponding Session Manager deployed on DC2.
- The DC1 Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway initiates the call. To route the media, the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway uses the Session Border Controller and Avaya Aura[®] Media Server deployed on DC1.
- 3. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway sends the SIP call to Session Manager deployed on DC1.
- 4. Session Manager deployed on DC1 forwards the call to Session Manager deployed on DC2.
- 5. Session Manager deployed on DC2 forwards the SIP invite to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway from DC2, where the second client is logged in.
- 6. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway from DC2 uses the Session Border Controller and Avaya Aura[®] Media Server deployed on DC2 to pass the media through the firewall to the second client.



Signalling and media path topology when both clients are located in or near the same data center

In the following topology example, there are two data centers with one Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in each data center. Two clients are located in or near the same data center (DC1):

- The first client is located outside the firewall.
- The second client is located inside the enterprise network.

Both clients are registered on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway to receive calls. When one client makes a call to the other, the call follows the following flow:

1. Both clients log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway and activate the call service.

Both clients resolve the FQDN to the address of the load balancer deployed on DC1 and communicate with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployed on DC1.

- 2. The external client initiates the call.
- 3. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway sends the SIP call to Session Manager deployed on DC1.
- 4. Session Manager deployed on DC1 forwards the call to the same Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployed on DC1, where the internal client is logged in.
- 5. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployed on DC1 uses the Session Border Controller and Avaya Aura[®] Media Server deployed on DC1 to pass the media through to the internal client.



Push notifications

The push notification mechanism enables clients to receive incoming call alerts and other notifications from the Apple Push Notification service (APNs). The push notification service sends notifications automatically. Therefore, an application can receive notifications even when it is suspended or in Sleep mode.

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway can send push notifications about the following telephony-related events:

- Incoming calls.
- Incoming calls on an Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager bridged line appearance.
- Incoming calls on an Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager enhanced pickup group.
- Incoming calls on an Avaya Aura[®] Communication Manager team button.

• Voicemail status updates.

For messaging push notifications, use Avaya Multimedia Messaging or Avaya Aura[®] Presence Services Release 8.0.2 or later.

For more information about configuring and using the push notifications service, see "Avaya push notification management" in *Administering the Avaya Aura*[®] *Web Gateway*.

Data encryption

As of Release 3.8, you can enable or disable data encryption when deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA. When data encryption is enabled, all operational data and log files are encrypted.

You can only enable data encryption on Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway if are using Appliance Virtualization Platform or a VMware Virtualized Environment. For Amazon Web Services (AWS) deployments, you must enable data encryption on AWS itself. For more information, see <u>How to</u> <u>Protect Data at Rest with Amazon EC2 Instance Store Encryption</u>.

Once data encryption is enabled, you cannot disable it using the configuration utility or the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal. To disable data encryption, you must redeploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA.

If you enabled data encryption and selected the **Require Encryption Pass-Phrase at Boot-Time** option, then you will need to enter the data encryption passphrase after every Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway reboot. If you do not select this option, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway enables the local key store to store encryption keys, so you do not need to enter the passphrase manually. However, this is a less secure solution. Alternatively, you can set up a remote key sever to store encryption keys on that server.

Encryption of Avaya Aura® Web Gateway partitions

When you enable data encryption for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, the following partitions are encrypted:

- **sdb**:/var/log/Avaya
- **sdc**:/media/data
- **sdd**:/media/cassandra

The sda boot disk is always unencrypted.

Data encryption management

After deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA with data encryption enabled, you can manage data encryption settings using system layer commands. For information about managing data encryption settings, see the "Security options" chapter in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Interoperability

Product compatibility

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway interacts with the following components. For information about interoperability and supported product versions, see <u>https://secureservices.avaya.com/compatibility-matrix/menus/product.xhtml</u>.

Component	Description
Avaya Aura [®] infrastructure	The following Avaya Aura [®] components must be installed and configured to use TLS:
	 Avaya Aura[®] Device Services: Provides centralized contact management services using REST-based APIs.
	 Avaya Aura[®] Media Server: Supports standard media processing features.
	Important:
	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway does not support Media Server High Availability cluster configuration when using WebRTC.
	 System Manager: Manages Avaya Aura[®] components, certificates, licenses, and checks log and alarm capabilities.
	 Session Manager: Enables applications to perform registration and telephony functions, such as call escalation.
Avaya Multimedia Messaging	A server that provides messaging services.
Conferencing	This describes the deployment for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway, but not Conferencing itself.
	The Avaya Meetings Server solution provides conferencing and collaboration functionality.
	Avaya Meetings Server is not available with the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Avaya Workplace Client only deployment option.
Avaya SBCE	A component that provides a common element to enable secure access to the Avaya infrastructure from untrusted networks, such as the internet. In addition to SIP firewall services, this component provides the Reverse Proxy services required for HTTP signaling, media traversal, and access to other data services.

Web browser requirements

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal supports the following web browsers:

- Internet Explorer 9, 10, or 11.
- Microsoft Edge 42 and later.
- The latest version of Mozilla Firefox or the version before it.
- Google Chrome 53 and later.

For information about supported browser versions for AWS deployments, see <u>https://</u> aws.amazon.com/console/faqs/#browser_support.

Chapter 3: Deployment process

The following table shows the high-level tasks for deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

High-level tasks	Notes
Perform planning and site preparation tasks.	See Planning checklist on page 26.
	As part of the site preparation, you must set up the required infrastructure components in your network. Avaya Aura [®] is required in Team Engagement deployments. Your deployment can also include Conferencing.
Complete initial setup and installation.	You must deploy the OVA for the VMware or AWS environment before you can install the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway software.
	See <u>Deployment process checklist</u> on page 49.
Perform configuration.	Perform the appropriate configuration tasks for each deployment option. For more information, see <u>Configuration worksheet</u> on page 23.

Configuration worksheet

Use this checklist to determine the configuration requirements for each deployment type. The deployment types are:

- Single FQDN, single data center.
- Multiple FQDNs, single data center.
- Multiple data centers, which is also known as geographical distribution.

The deployment option with multiple data centers requires multiple FQDNs. With this deployment, you require at least one FQDN for each service.

Task	Single FQDN, single data center	Multiple FQDNs, single data center	Multiple data centers
Configure a global FQDNs. See <u>Global</u> <u>FQDN configuration</u> on page 133	~	—	~
Configure Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway certificates.	For this deployment, use System Manager certificates if possible.	For this deployment, generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) and get it signed by a public CA.	For this deployment, use System Manager certificates if possible.
Configure System Manager. See <u>Adding</u> <u>the Avaya Aura Web</u> <u>Gateway to System</u> <u>Manager</u> on page 136.	~	~	~
Configure Avaya Aura [®] Media Server. See <u>Configuring Avaya Aura</u> <u>Media Server settings</u> on page 141.	~	~	~
Configure Avaya Aura [®] Device Services. See <u>Configuring the Avaya</u> <u>Aura Web Gateway on</u> <u>Avaya Aura Device</u> <u>Services</u> on page 143.	~	~	~

Task	Single FQDN, single data center	Multiple FQDNs, single data center	Multiple data centers
If your deployment includes Conferencing, configure Avaya Meetings Server. See <u>Configuring the Avaya</u> <u>Aura Web Gateway on</u> <u>Avaya Meetings</u> <u>Server</u> on page 144.	~	~	~
Configure the reverse proxy on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise. See <u>Reverse</u> <u>proxy configuration</u> on page 148.	~	~	~
If you are planning to use external clients outside the enterprise firewall, configure client access. See <u>External</u> <u>client access</u> <u>configuration</u> on page 159.	~	~	~
Configure an external load balancer. See <u>Route configuration for</u> <u>an external load</u> <u>balancer</u> on page 145.	_	_	~

Chapter 4: Planning and preinstallation

Review this chapter before you start installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. You can either deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using Amazon Web Services (AWS) or VMware.

Warning:

When you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, avoid copying and pasting commands directly from this document. This can introduce unwanted characters and errors. Double-check all inputs you copy or type them manually.

Planning checklist

This checklist outlines planning requirements and tasks that you must complete before deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Ensure that you have all required skills and knowledge.	Before deploying Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway, ensure that you have all required skills and knowledge described in this chapter.	
2	Ensure that you have all required components and equipment.	Team Engagement deployments require Avaya Aura [®] . Your deployment can also include Conferencing. For more information about components, see <u>Product</u> <u>compatibility</u> on page 21.	
		 You must also have: A virtual machine. You can deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in a VMware or Amazon Web Services environment either using either an Avaya-provided OVA or as a software-only application. Ensure your system meets the specifications outlined in <u>Resource profile specifications for Avaya</u> <u>Aura Web Gateway on VMware on page 30 and Resources profile</u> 	

No.	Task	Notes	~
		specifications for Avaya Aura Web Gateway on Amazon Web Services on page 31.	
		 The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6 operating system, if you are planning to install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application. If you are installing Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using an Avaya-provided OVA, the operating system is installed automatically. 	
		 An SSH tool, such as PuTTY. 	
		🔁 Tip:	
		Configure your SSH tool to properly see lines in the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway configuration utility. For example, in the PuTTY Reconfiguration screen, navigate to Window > Translation and do the following:	
		 Set Remote character set to Use font encoding. 	
		 Select Use Unicode line drawing code points. 	
3	Determine the structure of your deployment. Deployment types are:	Consider the following to determine which deployment type you require:	
	 A single FQDN with a single data center. Multiple FQDNs with a single data center. Multiple data centers. 	• Do you want a single FQDN for all services or a separate FQDN for each service? A single FQDN has some restrictions and requires internal traffic to be routed through the reverse proxy. However, with a single FQDN, you can use a single certificate for all services.	
		• Does your system require a single data center or multiple regionally-distributed data centers?	
4	Ensure that you can log in to the Avaya Product Licensing and Delivery System (PLDS) to download software and to obtain licences	Ensure that you have access to PLDS and can download files. Download the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway installation file from PLDS.	
		Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway software and enhanced user privileges are licensed capabilities.	

No.	Task	Notes	~
		You can access PLDS at <u>http://</u> <u>plds.avaya.com/</u> .	
5	Obtain the required IP addresses, FQDNs, and certificates.	The IP addresses are used by the interfaces of the different infrastructure components. Certificates are required to ensure secure interaction between solution components. For more information, see <u>Required FQDNs and</u> <u>certificates</u> on page 29.	
6	If you are planning to deploy a geographically distributed system, review the external load balancer requirements.	See <u>External load balancer requirements</u> on page 33.	
7	Open the required ports on the firewall.	For detailed information about the ports that must be opened, go to <u>https://</u> <u>support.avaya.com/security</u> , scroll down, and click Avaya Product Port Matrix Documents . Navigate to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway section and then click on the appropriate Port Matrix document for the release to open it.	

Required skills and knowledge

Before deploying the product, ensure that you know how to do the following:

- Manage VMware or AWS deployments.
 - For VMware deployments, you must be familiar with virtual machines using vCenter and vSphere.
 - For AWS deployments, you must be familiar with Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) and with the AWS Management console. For a list of supported browsers in AWS, see https://aws.amazon.com/console/fags/#browser_support.
- Install, deploy, and use key Avaya Aura[®] components.
- Install, set up, and use the enterprise LDAP directory.
- Use basic Linux commands.

Related links

Product compatibility on page 21

Required FQDNs and certificates

Required FQDNs	Required certificates
In a single FQDN model, you require one FQDN that represents all services. For example: webservices.company.com.	The certificate includes the FQDN and must be signed by a public CA.
From the internet, the FQDN resolves to the IP address of the external Avaya SBCE interface. Internally, from the enterprise, it resolves to the IP address of the internal Avaya SBCE interface.	
FQDN for the Avaya Meetings Server Management service. For example: conferencing_management.company.com. Internally the FQDN resolves to the virtual IP	In a single FQDN deployment, the certificate is signed by the System Manager CA. In a multiple FQDN deployment, the certificate is signed by a public CA.
In a multiple FQDN deployment, the FQDN resolves externally to the IP address of the external Avaya	
FQDN for each Web Collaboration Services server IP address. For example: webconference1.company.com, webconference2.company.com and so on. Internally, the FQDN resolves to the IP address of the Web Collaboration Services server.	In a single FQDN deployment, the certificate for each Web Collaboration Services server is signed by the System Manager CA. In a multiple FQDN deployment, the certificate is signed by a public CA.
In a multiple FQDN deployment, the FQDN resolves externally to the IP address of the external Avaya SBCE interface.	
FQDN for the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway portal server virtual IP address. For example:	The certificate must include the global services FQDN in the SAN.
Internally, the FQDN resolves to the virtual IP address of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway portal service.	In a single FQDN deployment, the certificate for each server IP address is signed by the System Manager CA.
In a multiple FQDN deployment, the FQDN resolves externally to the IP address of the external Avaya SBCE interface.	signed by a public CA.
FQDN for TURN media tunneling. For example: turnmedia.company.com.	The certificate is signed by a public CA.
The FQDN resolves to the IP address of the external Avaya SBCE interface used for TURN media.	

Required FQDNs	Required certificates
FQDN for HTTP media tunneling. For example: media.company.com.	The certificate is signed by a public CA.
The FQDN resolves to the IP address of the external Avaya SBCE interface used for HTTP media tunneling.	
FQDN for the Avaya SBCE management interface. For example: sbce_management.company.com.	The certificate is signed by the System Manager CA.
The FQDN resolves to the IP address for the internal Avaya SBCE interface used for management.	

Virtual machine requirements

VMware software requirements

The VMware software requirements apply both to OVA-based and software-only deployment options. The following VMware software versions are supported:

- VMware vSphere ESXi 6.0, 6.5, 6.7, and 7.0
- VMware vCenter Server 6.0, 6.5, 6.7 and 7.0

Resource profile specifications

Resource profile specifications for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on VMware

The following section outlines the resource profile specifications for differently sized virtual machines. The virtual machine resource requirements apply both to OVA-based and software-only deployment options.

Specifications	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3
vCPU	4	8	16
CPU reservation	4600 MHz	9200 MHz	18400 MHz
Memory	6 GB	12 GB	16 GB
Hard disk		132 GB	
Minimum clock speed	2600 MHz		

Specifications	Profile 1	Profile 2	Profile 3		
Capacity	Both of the following:	Both of the following:	Both of the following:		
	 1250 Conferencing or Avaya Workplace Client sessions 	 2500 Conferencing or Avaya Workplace Client sessions 	 5000 Avaya Workplace Client or Conferencing sessions 		
	 1250 Portal Conferencing users 	 2500 Portal Conferencing users 	 5000 Conferencing Portal users 		
Server type		Dell R220 or equivalent			
CPU	Intel Xeon CPU E5-26700@2.60GHz		GHz		
Physical processor	1	2	4		
Physical core	4				
NICs		1GBPS			
Load supported	 16 Conferencing calls per second. 	 33 Conferencing calls per second. 	 50 Conferencing calls per second. 		
	 12500 Avaya Workplace Client Busy Hour Call Attempts (BHCA). 	 25000 Avaya Workplace Client BHCA. 40 Portal user requests 	 50000 Avaya Workplace Client BHCA. 60 Portal user requests 		
	• 20 Portal user requests per second	per second	per second		

Resources profile specifications for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on Amazon Web Services

The following table outlines the profiles created by the CloudFormation template generators. You can use the CloudFormation template generation tool to create a template for the required profile. The template contains the computing and networking resources required for the profile.

These profile specifications apply both to OVA-based and software-only deployment options.

Profile	Service size	AWS instance type	vCPUs	Memory (GB)
Small	1250 sessions	c4.xlarge	4	6
Medium	2500 sessions	c4.2xlarge	8	8

Networking considerations for Amazon Web Services

There are some limitations for establishing public internet VPNs and direct connections into AWS. For more information about Amazon VPC Limits, see the AWS documentation at <u>https://docs.aws.amazon.com/vpc/latest/userguide/amazon-vpc-limits.html</u>.

Important:

Use a direct connection along with a private WAN connection with Service Level Agreement (SLA) measures to ensure that the network quality is appropriate for signaling and voice traffic.

Avaya is not responsible for network connections between AWS and the customer premises.

When you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in an AWS environment, also deploy a local LDAP server in AWS. This LDAP server is a replica server that synchronizes content from a master LDAP server within the enterprise. To reduce latency for authentication and directory lookup operations, this LDAP server must be collocated with Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in the same AWS region.

Connection types

You can connect applications in a hybrid network on the Amazon VPC in the following ways:

Connection type	Resource	
VPN connection	For information about VPN connections, see:	
	https://docs.aws.amazon.com/vpc/	
Direct connection	For information about AWS direct connections, see:	
	https://aws.amazon.com/directconnect/.	

Virtual disk volume specifications

The following table shows the file system layout for systems deployed using Avaya-provided OVAs.

Disk Volume	Volume size	Volume Size (GiB)			
	can be increased	Disk 1	Disk 2	Disk 3	Disk 4
/boot	No	0.2			
swap	Yes	8.0			
1	Yes	4.0			
/tmp	Yes	2.8			
/var	Yes	3.0			
/var/log	Yes	2.0			
/var/log/audit	Yes	3.0			
/home	Yes	4.0			
/opt/Avaya	Yes	15.0			
/var/log/Avaya	Yes		60.0		
/media/data	Yes			20.0	
/media/ cassandra	Yes				10.0
Total for disk		42.0	60.0	20.0	10.0

Disk Volume	Volume size can be increased	Volume Size (GiB)			
		Disk 1	Disk 2	Disk 3	Disk 4
Total disk size		132.0			

External load balancer requirements

In a geographically distributed deployment, the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway requires an external load balancer that must comply with the following requirements:

Requirement	Description
The HTTP Global Server Load Balancing (GSLB) must route requests basing on the user's location.	The GSLB functionality can be part of the DNS server and not the load balancer. In this case, however, the DNS server must be able to route requests to different locations based on the location of the browser that initiated the request.
The HTTP Load balancer must support	 Session affinity is based on cookies.
that all requests from the client are always routed to the same server.	• The reverse proxy inserts a cookie to responses for incoming HTTP requests and routes subsequent requests that contain the same cookie to the same Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server.
	 This feature is also known as sticky sessions. Do not use IP- based sticky sessions because this might affect load balancing.
The HTTP load balancer must support web sockets.	 The load balancer must not block web socket requests and must relay the web socket connections between the client and the server.
	 HTTP request timeout must be configurable. You must be able to configure the timeout value to the maximum duration of the conference to prevent it from timing out the web socket session.
The HTTP load balancer must support URL routing.	The load balancer must be able to route requests to different backends based on the request URL.
The HTTP load balancer must support URL rewrite.	The load balancer must be able to modify the URL path of the request based on simple rules to remove or rename parts of the path.
The HTTP load balancer must support TLS 1.2.	Some services might not support TLS versions other than 1.2.

Requirement	Description
The HTTP load balancer must support at	ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
least some of the listed ciphers when interacting with back-end services.	ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
	ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
	• ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
	ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
	• ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
	• ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA
	• AES128-GCM-SHA256
	• AES256-GCM-SHA384
	• AES128-SHA
The HTTP load balancer must be able to use TCP health checks.	The load balancer must be able to perform health checks of Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway servers using TCP responses. To avoid leaving multple TCP sockets opened, you must be able to configure TCP health checks to half-opened connections.
The external HTTP load balancer must be able to use standard headers to	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway uses the "Host" header to identify the FQDN that is used by the client to reach the system.
determine the FQDN from the original request that is used to reach the system.	ℜ Note:
	This behavior is required if the customer requires different FQDNs per location or uses different FQDNs to reach the system. If a single global FQDN is used, you can ignore this requirement.
The external HTTP load balancer must relay the client certificates.	This requirement is only needed for authenticating clients using a client certificate.
The HTTP load balancer must be able to insert custom headers to HTTP requests.	

Linux alias commands

Linux aliases are defined to make frequently used commands easier to use. When an alias is available for the required operation, you can use the alias instead of typing a long path name and using sudo. The path name specification and sudo invocation are built into the aliases that Avaya provides.

Table 1: Th	nree categories	of aliases with	their functionality	y description
-------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------------	---------------

Alias	Description
cdto	Change to frequently used directories.

Alias	Description
app	Perform application functions, such as install or backup.
SVC	Manage the state of application related services.

Some of the alias commands are only available after the application has been installed.

You can type any of the aliases in a Linux shell to list the supported commands.

The following image provides an example of how the aliases are used:

```
[admin@aawg-ova ~]$ cdto
Syntax: cdto <target>
Available navigation targets:
    base
                      [/opt/Avaya]
    root
                      [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent]
                      [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299]
    active
                      [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/CAS/3.4.0.0.299]
    cas
                      [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/CAS/3.4.0.0.299/misc]
    misc
                     [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/CAS/3.4.0.0.299/bin]
    bin
    config
                     [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/CAS/3.4.0.0.299/config]
                     [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/CAS/3.4.0.0.299/logs]
    logs
                     [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/.CSAInstallLogs]
    ilogs
    tlogs
                      [/opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/3.4.0.0.299/tomcat/8.0.24/logs]
[admin@msg-esg ~]$ app
Syntax: app <command> <arguments>
Available commands:
    install
                    [Run application installer for installation]
    status
                    [statusCSA.sh]
    configure [configureCSA.sh]
listnodes [clitool-csa.sh 1:
                    [clitool-csa.sh listClusterNodes]
    collectlogs [collectLogs.sh]
backup [backupCSA.sh]
    restore [restoreCSA.sh]
upgrade [Run application installer for upgrade]
rollback [rollbackCSA.sh]
removeinactive [removeVersion.sh (inactive instance)]
    uninstall
                    [uninstallCSA.sh]
```

Each alias category displays the target command, which is in square brackets. The syntax for the command is provided in the procedures outlined in this document. Arguments that you specify after an alias are passed through to the target command.

The system can simultaneously have both an active and inactive installation of the software. For example, after an upgrade, the earlier version becomes inactive, but the new version becomes active. The alias commands operate only on the active installation unless specified.

Alias example	Function provided
cdto logs	Changes to the log directory of the active installation on the system.
app install	Runs the staged application installer.
svc telportal restart	Restarts the telportal service.

Table 2: Examples of alias commands to be used in a Linux shell

😵 Note:

The aliases must be used only from the command line in a Linux shell. Do not use them in a script. You must use the actual target command in a script.

System layer commands

The **sys** command line alias facilitates the use and discovery of system layer commands. Typing this command without arguments provides syntax help, and a list of supported system layer commands. The following is an example:

```
[admin@server-dev ~]$ sys
Execute system layer commands.
    -h, --help
        Command syntax (this help)
    -hh, --hhelp
        Verbose help
Available commands:
    secconfig [Manage security settings]
    versions [Query version information]
    volmgt [Manage disk volume sizes]
    smcvemgt [Manage Spectre/Meltdown patches]
    extension [Manage system layer extensions]
    passwdrules [Manage password rules]
Command invocation syntax:
    sys <command> <arguments>
Command syntax
    sys <command> -h
```

[admin@server-dev ~]\$

Verbose help information

-hh is used for verbose help information, which provides a brief description of each available system layer command. The following is an example:

[admin@server-dev ~]\$ sys -hh

The "sys" command line alias facilitates access to the following commands related to the system layer of UCApp appliances. To obtain help with each of these commands, use the "-h" (or "--help") argument for help
with command line syntax, and "-hh" (or "--hhelp") for verbose help. secconfig Manages security-related settings. versions Queries the version information of various elements of the system layer. volmqt Queries the sizes of existing disk volumes and extends their sizes. smcvemqt Manages the enablement status of Linux kernel patches for the Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities. extension Manages the extensions for the system layer. Supported extensions are currently limited to the enablement of JAR files in the JRE library's extensions directory to support newer application loads. [admin@server-dev ~]\$

Any arguments provided after the name of the system layer command are passed through to that command.

sys secconfig command

sys secconfig provides access to the **secconfig** command, which existed in previous releases. The following is an example of this command:

```
[admin@server4950csa ~]$ sys secconfig --hhelp
This script is used to manage run-time security settings on this appliance.
The following command-line arguments are available:
--help, -h
Prints terse help (command line syntax).
--hhelp, -hh
Prints verbose help (this help).
--sshCBC < --enable | --disable | --query >
-cbc < -e | -d | -q >
Enables, disables, and queries the current state of SSH daemon
CBC-based ciphers.
--fips < --enable | --disable | --query >
Enables, disables, and queries the current state of FIPS on the system.
[admin@server4950csa ~]$
```

sys versions command

The **sys versions** command provides a summary of key system layer information, including the type of appliance (OVA), the version number of the system layer, the version of the current partitioning, and the OVA that was originally deployed.

```
[admin@server4889csa ~]$ sys versions
Appliance type : AAWG
System layer version : 3.4.3.0.2
Partitioning version : 2.0
Original OVA deploy : csa-3.5.0.0.365
[admin@server4889csa ~]$
```

sys volmgt command

Syntax help: sys volmgt --help

The sys volmgt command is used to query and extend disk volumes on the system.

Important:

The **sys volmgt** command is only available if data encryption is *disabled* on Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. If data encryption is enabled, this command is unavailable and you cannot allocate free disk space to disk volumes.

The following provides the command line syntax for this command:

```
[admin@server4889csa ~]$ sys volmgt --help
Svntax:
   --help,
                            -h
   --hhelp,
                            -hh
   --version,
                            -v
   --status,
                           -st
                           -s
   --summary,
   --monitor [tail|less], -m [tail|less]
   --logs,
                            -1
   --scan
   --extend <volume> [ <n>m | <n>g | <n>t --remaining ]
 --extend --all
   --reset
```

[admin@server4889csa ~]\$

Verbose help: sys volmgt --hhelp

The verbose help information for the scripts provides more information about what the tool is used for.

[admin@server4889csa ~]\$ sys volmgt --hhelp

This script provides for the ability to extend the sizes of volumes on this system. In order for a volume to be extended in size, the disk that hosts the volume must first be increased in size using the tools that are used to manage deployed virtual machines (VMware).

The following example illustrates how to add 20 GiB of storage to the application log volume (/var/log/Avaya). This volume is located on the second disk of the system and so this example assumes that disk 2 has been increased in size by 20 GiB.

sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya 20g

The above example will do two things:

- 1) It will extend the size of the LVM logical volume by 20 GiB.
- It will then extend the size of the Linux file system that is located inside that volume to the new size of the LVM logical volume.

Step (2) above may take several minutes to complete for larger volumes. If, for some reason, this second operation is interrupted, it can be re-run using the same command, but WITHOUT specifying the size argument. For example, the following command is used to perform step (2) only for the application log volume (/var/log/Avaya).

sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya

If in doubt as to whether or not all file systems have been fully extended in their respective volumes, step (2) can be executed across all volumes using a single command as follows:

sys volmgt --extend --all

Performing step (2) on a file system that is already fully extended in its LVM volume is a null operation (does no harm).

Note the following general points regarding this script:

- The extending of a volume cannot be undone. Make sure the correct volume is being extended, and by the correct size. To confirm any extend operation, the user is required to enter the response "confirm" (case insensitive).
- In order to avoid impacting system performance, avoid performing extend operations during periods of high traffic.
- Extend operations are performed by a background process, in order to avoid interference due to loss of an SSH connection. Avoid powering down or rebooting a server while there is a background operation in progress. The presence of a running background operation can be queried as follows:

sys volmgt --status

- Logical volumes on the system are referenced using their Linux file system mount points, such as /var/log/Avaya and /media/data, with the exception of the volume containing Linux swap, which has no mount point. The Linux swap volume is referenced using "swap".
- Sizes are specified in base 2 units rather than base 10 (SI) units. For example, 1g = 1 GiB = 1024 x 1024 x 1024 bytes.
- Summary information is displayed in GiB, with a resolution of two decimal places. When extending the sizes of LVM volumes, units can be specified in mebibytes (m), gibibytes (g), or tebibytes (t).
- Due to file system overhead allocation by the Linux kernel, the size of a file system will never exactly match the size as reported by the LVM volume that contains that file system. To be certain that a file system is fully extended to the size of the volume that contains it,

```
inspect the log file after issuing the extend operation as follows:
      sys volmgt --monitor less
 To perform such a check across all volumes:
      sys volmgt --extend --all
     sys volmgt --monitor less
The following arguments are supported by this script:
   --help, -h
       Terse help.
   --hhelp, -hh
       Verbose help (this help).
    --version, -v
        Prints the version of this script to stdout.
    --status, -st
        Prints the current status of this tool. Use this to determine
        if there is a background operation in progress, or the results
       of the last background operation.
    --summary, -s
       Prints a summary of disks, the LVM volumes contained on each disk,
        and the file system contained in each LVM volume. Disk information
        includes the size of the disk and the amount of free space
       available for allocation to volumes on the disk. LVM volume
       information includes the size of the LVM volume. File system
       information includes the size of the Linux file system and the
       current amount of space that is in use on that file system.
        Due to file system overhead allocation by the Linux kernel, the
       size of a file system will never exactly match the size as reported
       by the LVM volume that contains that file system. Refer to the top of
       this help information for more information.
    --monitor [tail|less]
              [tail|less]
   -m
       Browse the log file for the latest extend operation. Specify "tail"
        to use the tail browser. Specify "less" to use the less
       browser, which allows scrolling and searching through the log file.
        If neither is specified, the browser defaults to the tail browser.
    --logs
        Generate a zip file in the current working directory that contains
        all logs generated to date by this script.
    --scan
        Scan disks for newly available storage. Do this after increasing
        the disk size of one of more disks. Once scanned, the newly
        available space appears in the "Free" column in the "--summary"
       output, and is now available for allocation to volumes on that disk.
       A summary is printed after the scan to show the updated volume
       information.
    --extend <volume> [ <n>m | <n>g | <n>t --remaining ]--extend --all
        The first form of the command operates on a single volume. If a size
        is specified, then the LVM volume is extended by that size (step 1),
       and the file system it contains is extended to use the new space
       made available in that volume (step 2). If a size is not specfied,
       then the file system contained in that volume is extended (i.e.,
```

```
step 2 only).
      The "--all" form of the command is used to perform step 2 across
      all volumes on the system.
      For more information, see the examples at the top of this help.
      If "--remaining" is specified for the size, then the specified
      volume is extended with all remaining free space on that disk.
      If a specific increment is provided, then the volume is extended
      by that amount, reducing the amount of free space on the disk
      by that amount. Specific sizes are in the form of a number
      (e.g., "10", "10.5", or ".5") and a unit. Units are "m" for mebibites, "g" for gibibytes", and "t" for tebibytes".
      The smallest increment that can be specified is 100 MiB.
      Example invocations:
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya 10g
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya 10.5g
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya 0.5g
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya .5g
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya 500m
sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya --remaining
          sys volmgt --extend /var/log/Avaya
--reset
      Resets internal tracking data. Use this if this script is blocked
      on an invalid background progress indication. This condition can
      arise if a background operation was prematurely terminated due to,
      for example, a system reboot. Verify that no background operations
      are in progress prior to executing this command, through verification
      of the process id as reported by the "--status" argument.
```

[admin@server4889csa ~]\$

Partitioning examples: sys volmgt --summary

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway supports partitioning version 2.0.

The following example shows a summary of the information provided by this command for a version 2.0 partitioned system:

[admin@server4950csa ~]\$ sys volmgt -s

Disk and Volume Summary

+ Num	Name	Disk Size	Free	+ Name	- Volume LVM Size	File S Size	System Usage
1 	sda	41.78	0.00	/ /home /opt/Avaya /tmp /var /var/log /var/log/audit swap	$\begin{array}{r} 4.00\\ 4.00\\ 14.97\\ 2.81\\ 3.00\\ 2.00\\ 3.00\\ 8.00\end{array}$	3.81 3.81 14.61 2.71 2.89 1.91 2.89 n/a	1.26 0.05 1.14 0.01 0.03 0.00 0.00 n/a
2	sdb	60.00	0.00	/var/log/Avaya	60.00	58.93	0.05
+ 3 +	sdc	20.00	0.00	/ /media/data	20.00	19.56	0.04

| 4 sdd 10.00 0.00 | /media/cassandra 10.00 9.71 0.02 |

sys smcvemgt command

The system layer **smcvemgt** command is used to manage the Linux kernel patches related to the following vulnerabilities:

- Variant #2/Spectre (CVE-2017–5715)
- Variant #3/Meltdown (CVE-2017–5754)



The kernel patch for the Variant #1/Spectre (CVE-2017–5754) vulnerability is permanently enabled on the system and cannot be disabled.

The choice to enable or disable these patches is a trade-off between performance and security impact:

- If the patches are enabled, the system might experience noticeable performance losses.
- If the patches are disabled, the system is not protected against the Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/Meltdown vulnerabilities.

By default, Linux patches for Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/Meltdown are enabled. The Variant #2/Spectre patch is enabled with Linux kernel defaults. In default operation mode, the Variant #2/Spectre Linux patch selects the mitigation method that is best suited for the processor architecture of the host machine.

😵 Note:

To be fully functional, patches for the Variant #2/Spectre vulnerability require hardware support, which is provided by VMware and hardware vendors through microcode updates.

Changes made by the smcvemgt command to the Linux kernel tunalbles always cause a server reboot. The script does not manage the state of application services. To ensure that the application services are stopped before the reboot, run the svc csa stop command before using the smcvemgt command. After the reboot, manually start the application services using the svc csa start command.

For more information about Spectre and Meltdown kernel tunables that are affected by the **smcvemgt** command, see <u>https://access.redhat.com/articles/3311301</u>. For more information about the Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities, see <u>https://access.redhat.com/security/vulnerabilities/speculativeexecution</u>.

Syntax help: sys smcvemgt --help

```
[admin@server-dev ~]$ sys smcvemgt --help
Version 1.2
Syntax:
    --help, -h
    --hhelp, -hh
    --query, -q
    --set, -s enabled
    --set, -s disabled
    --set, -s [ v2=<v2-mode> ] [ v3=<v3-mode> ]
```

```
(v2-mode: disabled | default | kernel | user | both | user+retp)
  (v3-mode: disabled | enabled)
--history
```

Verbose help: sys smcvemgt --hhelp

[admin@srvr-dev ~]\$ sys smcvemgt --hhelp

Version 1.2

This script manages the enablement status of the Linux kernel patches for the following Spectre and Meltdown vulnerabilities:

Variant #2/Spectre (CVE-2017-5715) Variant #3/Meltdown (CVE-2017-5754)

The kernel patch for the following related vulnerability is permanently enabled on the system (cannot be disabled):

Variant #1/Spectre (CVE-2017-5753)

Note that hardware support is required for Variant #2/Spectre to be fully functional. CPU microcode updates must be applied in order for this hardware support to be provided. The "--query" argument includes an indication as to whether or not hardware support is provided on this server.

For more information on Spectre/Meltdown kernel tunables, refer to:

https://access.redhat.com/articles/3311301

For additional information on the Spectre/Meltdown vulnerabilities, refer to:

https://access.redhat.com/security/vulnerabilities/speculativeexecution

Syntax:

--help, -h Provide terse help. --hhelp, -hh Provide verbose help (this text). --query, -q Query the configuration of the Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/ Meltdown tunables for system reboots, as well as on the running system. --set, -s enabled --set, -s disabled --set, -s [v2=<v2-mode>] [v3=<v3-mode>] Enables and disables Variant #2/Spectre ("v2") and/or Variant #3/ Meltdown ("v3") patches. This immediately reboots the server. Applications on the server are not managed by this script. Ensure that any applications are disabled, as required, prior to changing kernel settings with this script. If "enabled" is specified, then both v2 and v3 are enabled, with v2 set to kernel default behavior. If "disabled" is specified, then both v2 and v3 are disabled. Otherwise, kernel patches are enabled or disbled as per the specified "v2" and/or "v3"

```
v2-mode:
        disabled
           Variant #2/Spectre is disabled.
        default
            The kernel decides how to set tunables for Variant #2/
            Spectre, based on the processor architecture. Note that for
            architectures prior to Skylake, the kernel selects
           retpoline ("return trampoline") over ibrs.
        kernel
            Use "ibrs" (i.e., kernel space only).
        user
            Use "ibrs user" (i.e., userland only).
        both
            Use "ibrs always" (i.e., kernel space and userland).
        user+retp
           Use "retpoline, ibrs user".
    v3-mode:
        disabled
            Variant #3/Meltdown is disabled.
        enabled
           Variant #3/Meltdown is enabled.
   The following two commands are equivalent:
        sys smcvemgt enabled
        sys smcvemgt v2=default v3=enabled
   The following two commands are equivalent:
        sys smcvemgt disabled
        sys smcvemgt v2=disabled v3=disabled
--history
    Show a history of changes made to the enablement status of the
    Spectre and Meltdown patches.
```

sys smcvemgt usage examples

Command for querying current tunable settings

The following command queries the current tunable settings for the next boot, as well as the current runtime. This command also indicates whether there is hardware support for Variant #2/ Spectre.

sys smcvemgt --query

Command for enabling patches with default settings

The following command enables patches for Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/Meltdown, where Variant #2/Spectre is configured for default mode. In default mode, the kernel selects the Variant #2/Spectre mitigation mechanism based on the CPU architecture of the host machine.

```
sys smcvemgt --set enabled
```

Commands for enabling patches with specific settings

• The following command enables patches for Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/Meltdown, where Variant #2/Spectre is set to kernel space only.

sys smcvemgt --set v2=kernel v3=enabled

• The following command enables patches for Variant #2/Spectre, which are configured for user space with "Retpoline", or "return trampoline". Variant#3/Meltdown retains its current settings.

sys smcvemgt --set v2=user+retp

Command for disabling patches

The following command disables patches for Variant #2/Spectre and Variant #3/Meltdown. sys smcvemgt --set disabled

Command for disabling patches for a specific vulnerability

The following command disables patches for Variant #3/Meltdown. Variant #2/Spectre retains its current settings.

sys smcvemgt --set v3=disabled

passwdrules command

Description

sys passwdrules allows you to review and edit complexity rules for passwords that you use to log in to the virtual machine with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA using an SSH connection.

If data encryption is enabled, these rules also apply to encryption passphrases.

Syntax

sys passwdrules [show] [set [options]] [set-default]

- **show** Shows the server password rule configuration, including default, minimum, and maximum values.
- **set** Sets server password rules. If you do not specify any options, then Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway prompts you to configure each option separately. If you do not specify a certain option, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway continues to use the existing rule for this option.

set- Sets server password rules to their default values.

default

Syntax help

sys passwdrules [-h | --help]

Options

Option	Description
diff=INTEGER	Number of characters in the new password that must not be present in the old password.
min-len=INTEGER	Minimum length of the password.
min-digs=INTEGER	Minimum number of digits in the password.
-min-upper=INTEGER	Minimum number of uppercase characters in the password.
min- lower= <i>INTEGER</i>	Minimum number of lowercase characters in the password.
min-	Minimum number of special characters in the password.
other=INTEGER	Important:
	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway supports the following special characters: !, @, #, %, \$, ^, *, ?, and
min-class = <i>INTEGER</i>	Minimum number of character classes that must be present in the password. The character classes are:
	• Digits
	Uppercase characters
	Lowercase characters
	Special characters
max-	Maximum allowed number of consecutively repeated characters.
repeat= <i>INTEGER</i>	For example, if you set this parameter to 3, then the following password is invalid: paaassword, because a is repeated three times.
max-class- repeat=INTEGER	Maximum allowed number of consecutively repeated characters of the same class.
	For example, if you set this parameter to 3, then the <code>pas1sw2or3d</code> password is invalid, because the first three characters, which are <code>p</code> , <code>a</code> , and <code>s</code> , belong to the same character class.

Example

The following is an example of a command that sets the following password rules:

- At least 16 characters in total.
- At least two digits.
- At least one special character.
- Other settings are default.

sys passwdrules set --min-len=16 --min-digs=2 --min-other=1

Data encryption commands

The following sections contains command you can use to manage data encryption. These commands are available if you enabled data encryption during Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA deployment.

You cannot enable or disable data encryption using system layer commands.

Important:

In AWS deployments, you enable data encryption on AWS itself. Therefore, you cannot use the system layer commands for disk encryption management in AWS deployments.

encryptionPassphrase command

Description

You can run the **sys encryptionPassphrase** command to manage the encryption passphrase.

Syntax

sys encryptionPassphrase [add | change | remove | list]

add	Enables you to	set up an	encryption	passphrase.
-----	----------------	-----------	------------	-------------

change Enables you to change the existing encryption passphrase.

remove Removes the encryption passphrase.

list Displays information about passphrases and slot assignments.

encryptionRemoteKey command

Description

You can use the **sys encryptionRemoteKey** command to manage the remote key server. If you run the command without any parameters, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway displays help information about the command.

Syntax

sys encryptionRemoteKey [add <server address> [<port>] | remove <server address> | list]

add Enables you to add a remote key server.

remove Removes the remote key server.

list Displays general remote key server information.

encryptionLocalKey command

Description

You can use the **disk** encryptionLocalKey command to manage the local key store. If you run this command without any parameters, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway displays help information.

Syntax

```
sys encryptionLocalKey [enable | disable]
```

enable Enables the local key store.

disable Disables the local key store.

encryptionStatus command

Description

The **sys encryptionStatus** command displays information about data encryption on Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway , including the following:

- Whether data encryption is enabled.
- Whether the local key store is enabled.
- Whether the encryption password is used.

Syntax

sys encryptionStatus

Characters supported for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway passwords

You can use the following characters for Avaya Aura® Web Gateway passwords:

- Uppercase letters: A to Z
- · Lowercase letters: a to z
- Numerics: 0 to 9
- Special characters: !, @, #, %, \$, ^, *, ?, and _

These rules apply to all passwords that you enter manually to access resources and for Keystore passwords.



The web administration portal supports Active Directory-based authentication. Therefore, you can use other special characters, such as double quotes ("), for web administration portal passwords.

Chapter 5: Initial setup for VMware and AWS deployments

You can use the following options to deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway:

- As a software-only application that you can install on your own Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.6 physical servers or virtual machines.
- In a VMware environment using an Avaya-provided, application-specific RHEL 7.6 OVA.

This option also includes installing Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on an Appliance Virtualization Platform host using Solution Deployment Manager.

• In an Amazon Web Services (AWS) environment using an Avaya-provided, application-specific RHEL 7.6 OVA.

Use the following sections to perform the initial VMware or AWS setup.

Deployment process checklist

This checklist describes the high-level deployment process for virtual machine deployments on VMware and AWS.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	 Depending on the deployment option, do one of the following: For OVA-based deployments, Deploy the OVA for VMware or AWS environment. For software-only deployments, deploy your RHEL 7.6 virtual machines and install the system layer. 	 If you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using an Avaya-provided OVA, see: For VMware deployments, see the procedures in <u>VMware</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 51. For Amazon Web Services deployments, see the procedures in <u>Amazon Web Services</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 57. 	

Table continues...

No.	Task	Notes	•
		If you deploy Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway as a software-only application, see:	
		For VMware deployments, see the procedures in <u>Software-only</u> installation checklist for VMware-based environment on page 74.	
		For Amazon Web Services deployments, see the procedures in <u>Software-only installation checklist for</u> <u>Amazon Web Services</u> on page 85.	
		The Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway OVA file includes openjdk. Operating system updates for virtual machines include updates for openjdk.	
2	Optional: Enable FIPS mode.	For OVA-based deployments, you can only enable FIPS mode before installing the application layer. For information about enabling FIPS for OVA-based deployments, see <u>Enabling FIPS</u> <u>mode</u> on page 94.	
		For software-only deployments, you can only enable FIPS mode before installing the system layer. For information about enabling FIPS for software-only deployments, see <u>Enabling FIPS for</u> <u>software-only systems</u> on page 80.	
3	Optional: For OVA-based deployments, enable additional STIG hardening.	You only need to enable additional hardening if your organization policies require full Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIG) compliance.	
		For more information, see <u>Enabling</u> <u>additional STIG hardening</u> on page 96.	
		You cannot enable additional STIG hardening in software-only deployments.	
4	Install or restore the application layer as required.	For information about installing the initial node, see <u>Installing the Avaya Aura</u> <u>Web Gateway</u> on page 98.	
		For information about installing additional nodes, see <u>Installing</u>	

Table continues...

No.	Task	Notes	*
		additional nodes to create a cluster on page 104.	
5	If you are installing a cluster, configure RSA keys for SSH connections after all additional nodes are installed.	See <u>Configuring RSA public and private</u> <u>keys for SSH connections in a cluster</u> on page 107.	

VMware deployments

Deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA on a virtual machine using either vCenter or vSphere. The components of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, Endpoint Service Gateway, and Unified Portal are provided in a single OVA file.

Obtaining the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA file

Procedure

Do one of the following:

- Download the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA from the Avaya Product Licensing and Delivery System (Avaya PLDS) at <u>https://plds.avaya.com</u>.
- Place an order for the DVDs containing the OVA file using the Material Code ID or description.

For more information about the material ID, see "Product Order Codes and Pricing" in *Avaya Aura*[®] *Web Gateway Offer Definition*.

OVA deployment

Use one of the following procedures to deploy the OVA. You can use vCenter, vSphere, or Solution Development Manager (SDM).

Important:

When deploying an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, you must use the same resource profile for each Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node in the cluster. Mixed profile clusters are not supported.

Related links

Resource profile specifications for Avaya Aura Web Gateway on VMware on page 30

Supported vSphere clients

The following table lists vSphere clients that you can use to deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA depending on the VMware ESXi version you are using.

Client type	Launched from	Is supported on		
		ESXi 6.0	ESXi 6.5	ESXi 6.7
vSphere client application	Application installed on your computer.	~	×	×
vSphere web client for vCenter	Web client launched with the IP of vCenter.	~	~	~
ESXi host web client	Web client launched with the IP of the individual ESXi host.	~	~	•

Deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA using vCenter Procedure

- 1. Log in to vCenter.
- 2. Navigate to File > Deploy OVF Template.
- 3. From the Source page, click **Browse** and then select the OVA file.

For example, csa-<version>_OVF10.ova

- 4. Verify the information displayed in OVF Template Details and then click **Next**.
- 5. Review and accept the End User License Agreement (EULA) and then click Next.
- 6. From the Name and Location page, do the following:
 - a. Specify a name.
 - b. Select an inventory location or data store.
 - c. Click Next.
- 7. From the Deployment Configuration page, select a profile and then click Next.

You can select one the following resource profiles from the **Configuration** drop-down menu:

- AAWG Profile 3 Max Sessions 5,000
- AAWG Profile 1 Max Sessions 1,250
- AAWG Profile 2 Max Sessions 2,500

If you are deploying the OVA for a non-seed node in a cluster, you must use the same resource profile that you used for the seed node. For more information about resource profile specifications, see <u>Resource profile specifications for Avaya Aura Web Gateway on</u> <u>VMware</u> on page 30.

- 8. From the Host/Cluster page, do the following:
 - a. Select the host on which the template will be deployed.

- b. Click Next.
- 9. From the Disk Format page, do the following:
 - a. Select a thick or thin provision option.

If you select a thick provision option, the entire disk space will be reserved and unavailable for other virtual machines to use.

If you select the thin provision option, unused space will be available for other virtual machines to use.

- b. Click Next.
- 10. From the Network Mapping page, do the following:
 - a. Map the source network used with the appropriate destination network.
 - b. Click Next.
- 11. From the Properties page, do the following:
 - a. Complete the required network information, such as your IP address, host name or FQDN, Netmask, and DNS.
 - b. Enter credentials for a Linux administrator user, which include the user name, password, and group.

The default user name is admin, group is admingrp, and password is avaya123.

c. Configure data encryption settings.

For information about data encryption fields, see <u>Data encryption field descriptions</u> on page 53.

12. From the Ready to Complete tab, verify your settings and then click **Next** to complete the installation.

Next steps

Install the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Data encryption field descriptions

Data encryption is only supported with AVP and the VMware Virtualized Environment.

Name	Description
Data Encryption	Use this option to enables or disable data encryption.
	The options are:
	• 1: To enable data encryption.
	• 2: To disable data encryption.

Table continues...

Name	Description	
	Important:	
	You cannot change encrypted Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway to non- encrypted or vise versa without a new OVA installation.	
	 On Solution Deployment Manager: When the Data Encryption field is set to 1, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway enables the Encryption Pass- Phrase and Re-enter Encryption Pass-Phrase fields to enter the encryption passphrase. 	
	 On vCenter or ESXi: When the Data Encryption field is set to 1, enter the encryption passphrase in the Password and Confirm Password fields. 	
Encryption Pass-Phrase	The passphrase for data encryption. This field is applicable when data encryption is enabled.	
	When you deploy Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway using Solution Deployment Manager, Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway applies the password complexity rules.	
	When you deploy Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway using vCenter or ESXi, Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway does not apply password complexity rules.	
	Important:	
	While using vCenter, when you enable data encryption and do not enter the encryption passphrase, the system does not block the deployment due to a vCenter limitation. Therefore, ensure that you enter the encryption passphrase if data encryption is enabled.	
Re-enter Encryption Pass- Phrase	The password for data encryption.	
Require Encryption Pass- Phrase at Boot-Time	When this check box is selected, you must type the encryption passphrase whenever Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway reboots. By default the Require Encryption Pass-Phrase at Boot-Time check box is selected.	
	Important:	
	You must remember the data encryption passphrase. If you lose the data encryption password, the only option to access Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway is to reinstall the OVA.	
	If the check box is not selected, Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway creates a local key store and you do not need to type the encryption passphrase when Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway reboots. However, this will make the system less secure.	
	You can also set up a remote key server and start using it by running the sys encryptionRemoteKey command after Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway is installed. The remote key server provides more security than the local key store.	

Deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA using vSphere connected directly to the ESXi host

Procedure

- 1. Log in to vSphere.
- 2. Navigate to File > Deploy OVF Template.
- 3. Perform steps $\underline{3}$ on page 52 to $\underline{9}$ on page 53.

These steps are the same in vCenter and vSphere.

- 4. Turn on your virtual machine, and do the following:
 - a. Access the VM console.
 - b. Accept the license agreement and continue with the following post-installation steps.
- 5. Provide the network settings information

The following image provides an example of network and IP settings in the VM console:

ing Started Summary Resource Allocation Performance	Events Console Permissions
i+o +	1
WFO Command Li	ine Operations:
Please give th	ne following inputs
Please enter t	the IP Address to assign to the VM :135.27.175.46
Please enter t	the Netmask to assign to the VM: 255.255.255.0
Please enter t	the short hostname to assign to the VM:csa-test
Please enter t	the domain name to assign to the VM:avaya.com
Please enter t	the IP Address of your default gateway: 135.27.175.1
Please enter t	the IP Address of your DNS server(s) [Multiple IPs separated by ,(c
omma)]:135.20	J.246.15
Please enter t	the default Search List (optional)[Multiple domain seperated by ,(c
omma)]:avaya.	. COM
Please provide	e NTP Server IP or FQDN [Multiple IP or FQDN separated by ,(comma)
l:ntp.dr.avaya	a.com
Please select	the Time Zone Detail:
Please select	a continent or ocean.
1) Africa	4) Arctic Ocean 7) Australia 10) Pacific Ocean
2) Americas	5) Asia 8) Europe
3) Antarctica	6) Atlantic Ocean 9) Indian Ocean
#? 2	
Please select	a country.
1) Anguilla	
2) Antigua &	Barbuda 29) Honduras
3J Argentina	30) Jamaica
4) Aruba	31) martinique

- 6. Ensure that the Default Search List includes the list of domains for:
 - Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway
 - Avaya Meetings Server Management
 - System Manager and LDAP

Deploying the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA through Solution Deployment Manager from System Manager

About this task

Use this procedure to create a virtual machine on the ESXi host and deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA on the virtual machine. You can also use this procedure to deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA on Appliance Virtualization Platform (AVP).

Before you begin

- Ensure that you are familiar with the "Deployment checklist" section in *Deploying Avaya Aura*[®] *applications from System Manager*.
- Add AVP or an ESXi host to the location. For more information, see "Adding an Appliance Virtualization Platform or ESXi host" in *Deploying Avaya Aura*® *applications from System Manager*.

Procedure

1. Upload the required OVA file to System Manager.

For information about uploading a file to the software library, see "Downloading the OVA file to System Manager" in *Deploying Avaya Aura*[®] applications from System Manager.

- 2. On the System Manager web console, click **Services > Solution Deployment Manager > Application Management**.
- 3. In Application Management Tree, select a platform.
- 4. On the Virtual Machines tab, in the VMs for Selected Location <location name> section, click **New**.

The system displays the VM Deployment window.

- 5. In the Select Location and Platform section, do the following:
 - a. In Select Location, select a location.
 - b. In Select Platform, select a platform.

The system displays the hostname in the **Platform FQDN** field.

- 6. In Data Store, select a data store.
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. On the OVA tab, do the following:
 - a. In Select Software Library, select Select OVA from software library.
 - b. In **Select Software Library**, select the local or remote library where the OVA file is located.
 - c. In Select OVAs, select the OVA that you want to deploy.
 - d. In Flexi Footprint, select the footprint size that the application supports.

- 9. On the Configuration Parameters page, specify the following:
 - Management network settings
 - Public network settings
 - Admin user details
- 10. On the Network Parameters page, choose any application.
- 11. Click Deploy.
- 12. Click Accept the license terms.

In the Hosts for Selected Location <location name> section, the system displays the deployment status in the Current Action Status column.

The system displays the virtual machine on the VMs for Selected Location <location name> page.

13. To view details, click Status Details.

Amazon Web Services deployments

Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a cloud services platform that enables enterprises to securely run applications on the virtual cloud. The key components of AWS are Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) and Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3).

When you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in an AWS environment, also deploy a local LDAP server in AWS. This LDAP server is a replica server that synchronizes content from a master LDAP server within the enterprise. To reduce latency for authentication and directory lookup operations, this LDAP server must be collocated with Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in the same AWS region.

AWS deployments do not support IPv6.

😵 Note:

Use the AWS Command Line Interface (CLI) for managing AWS services from your computer. For more information about setting up the AWS CLI, see <u>https://aws.amazon.com/cli</u> and <u>http://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-chap-getting-started.html#cli-quick-configuration</u>.

😵 Note:

Use Elastic IP addresses for AWS deployments. An Elastic IP address is a public IPv4 address, which is reachable from the Internet. If your instance does not have a public IPv4 address, you can associate an Elastic IP address to enable communication with the internet. For example, you can connect to the instance from your local computer. For more information about elastic IPs, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-ip-addresses-eip.html.

Signing in to the AWS Management console

About this task

There are many different ways you can sign in to your AWS account, so step-by-step procedures are not given here. See the following website for more information:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/knowledge-center/sign-in-console/

Before you begin

Ensure that you have an AWS account.

Configuring AWS details using the AWS CLI

About this task

The first time that you use the AWS CLI, you must configure the AWS details.

Before you begin

Set up the AWS CLI on a computer with access to AWS. For more information, see <u>http://</u><u>docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-chap-welcome.html</u>.

Procedure

1. Start a command line interpreter on the computer with the installed AWS CLI.

😵 Note:

The AWS CLI supports different Windows and Linux command line interpreters, such as PowerShell or Bash.

- 2. From the command line interpreter, run the command aws configure, and do the following:
 - a. For AWS Access Key ID, type the AWS access key ID.
 - b. For AWS Secret Access Key, type the AWS secret access key ID.
 - c. For **Default region name**, type the region name.

For example: us-west-2.

d. For **Default output format**, type text or json.

Creating a key pair

About this task

A key pair is a set of public and private keys. The public key is used to encrypt data, such as the login password. The private key is used to decrypt the encrypted data. You provide this key pair

when you create a CloudFormation stack, and use it for SSH access to the Amazon Machine Instances.

For more information, see the following website:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-key-pairs.html

Procedure

- 1. Sign in to the Amazon Web Services Management console.
- 2. In the left navigation pane, go to NETWORK & SECURITY, and click Key Pairs.
- 3. Click Create Key Pair.
- 4. In the Create Key Pair dialog box, in the Key pair name field, type a name for the key pair.
- 5. Click Create.

The system generates a *.pem file and prompts you to save the file on your computer. You can also view the created key pair name in the Key pair name column.

6. Save the *.pem file.

Important:

When you create a key pair, save it. If you lose the key, you cannot retrieve it and you will not be able to access the instance.

OVA to AMI conversion

Creating a bucket for uploading the OVAs for AMI conversion Procedure

- 1. Sign in to the Amazon Web Services Management console.
- 2. Under AWS services, navigate to All services > Storage > S3.

The system displays the S3 Management Console page.

3. Click Create bucket.

The system displays the Create bucket dialog box.

4. In **Bucket name**, type a unique bucket name.

Only use lowercase letters for the name.

- 5. In the **Region** field, click a region for your bucket.
- 6. Click Create bucket.

Next steps

Upload the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway OVA.

Creating a service role

About this task

Use this procedure to create a role named vmimport for importing files into the S3 bucket.

Use the AWS CLI to run the commands in this procedure.

Procedure

- 1. Start a command line interpreter on a computer with the installed AWS CLI.
- 2. Run the following command to create a role named vmimport and let the AWS image import service assume this role:

```
aws iam create-role --role-name vmimport --assume-role-policy-document <file:// trust-policy.json>
```

In this command, <file://trust-policy.json> is a path to the trust-policy.json file. This file is included in the AWS configuration files artifact.

3. Open the role-policy.json file, and in each "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::<disk-image-file-bucket>" string, replace <disk-image-file bucket> with the actual S3 bucket name.

For example:

"Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::my-s3-bucket"

4. Run the following command to allow the vmimport role to perform importing procedures:

aws iam put-role-policy --role-name vmimport --policy-name vmimport --policydocument <file://role-policy.json>

In this command, <file://rule-policy.json> is a path to the rule-policy.json file. This file is included in the AWS configuration files artifact.

Uploading the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA

Before you begin

Download the OVAs from the Avaya PLDS website at http://plds.avaya.com/.

Procedure

- 1. Sign in to the Amazon Web Services Management console.
- 2. Under AWS services, navigate to All services > Storage > S3.

The system displays the S3 Management Console page.

- 3. From the All Buckets area, select a bucket.
- 4. Click Upload.
- 5. In the dialog box that is displayed, click **Add Files** and upload the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA with the -aws-001-ova suffix.

Converting the imported OVA to AMI

About this task

You can use files in the JSON format that are included in the AWS configuration files artifact. The AWS configuration files artifact also contains single-node and multi-node CloudFormation template generators that you use for AWS server deployment. The AWS configuration file contains the following:

- trust-policy.json
- role-policy.json
- Single-Node-Cloud-Template-Gen.html
- Multi-Node-Cloud-Template-Gen.html

For more information, see <u>http://docs.aws.amazon.com/vm-import/latest/userguide/vmimport-image-import.html</u>.

Use the AWS CLI to run the commands in this procedure.

Before you begin

You need the following to convert the OVA file to an Amazon Machine Image (AMI), to deploy the AMI, and configure Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway:

• Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVAs with the -aws-001.ova suffix has been uploaded to an S3 bucket.

Ensure that you also convert the *.pem file to the *.ppk format and configure PuTTY for establishing an SSH connection.

Ensure that you updated AWS details using the AWS CLI. For more information, see <u>Configuring</u> <u>AWS details using the AWS CLI</u> on page 58.

Procedure

- 1. Start a command line interpreter on a computer with the installed AWS CLI.
- 2. Run the following command to check whether the S3 bucket is ready to use:

aws s3 ls

The system displays the S3 bucket that you created.

- 3. To view the content of the S3 bucket, run the aws s3 ls s3://<nameofbucket> command.
- 4. To import the ova for conversion, run the following command:

```
>aws ec2 import-image --cli-input-json "{ \"Description\": \"<server.ova>\",
\"DiskContainers\": [ { \"Description\": \"<text description of task>\",
\"UserBucket\": { \"S3Bucket\": \"<your_bucket_name>\", \"S3Key\" : \"<server.ova>
\" } ]}"
```

The system displays the Status and the ImportTaskId parameters.

In the following example, when the system converts the CM Simplex OVA, ImportTaskId is import-ami-ffmanv5x.

"Status": "active",

```
"Description": "<version>-aws-001.ova",
"Progress": "2",
"SnapshotDetails": [
                {
                "UserBucket": {
                    "S3Bucket": "<version>-dev",
                "S3Key": "<version>-aws-001.ova"
                },
                "DiskImageSize": 0.0
                }
],
"StatusMessage": "pending",
"ImportTaskId": "import-ami-fftlelct"
```

5. To check the status of the import image, run the following command:

```
aws ec2 describe-import-image-tasks --cli-input-json "{ \"ImportTaskIds\":
[\"<Your ImportTaskId>\"], \"NextToken\": \"abc\", \"MaxResults\": 10 } "
```

The conversion process takes up to 30 minutes. You can run the above command repeatedly.

In the following example, the process is preparing the AMI and is 76% complete:

```
IMPORTIMAGETASKS x86_64 CM-Simplex-07.1.0.0.xxx-aws-001.ova import-ami-ffgji45r BYOL Linux 76 active preparing ami
```

The output format varies depending on the selection of the text or JSON format on the AWS CLI configuration.

- 6. Sign in to the Amazon Web Services Management console.
- 7. Go to Services > Compute and then click EC2.

The system displays the EC2 Management Console page.

8. In the left navigation pane, click IMAGES > AMIs.

You can search the converted AMI with ImportTaskId. The system displays the newly converted AMI ImageId in the AMI ID column.

Next steps

Create CloudFormation templates, which can be used to create a stack.

Creating CloudFormation templates

About this task

Use CloudFormation templates to create an AWS stack.

Important:

To create CloudFormation templates, use one of the following web browsers:

- Google Chrome
- Mozilla Firefox

Internet Explorer and Microsoft Edge are not supported.

Before you begin

Download the compressed artifact containing the configuration files to your computer. Extract the two CloudFormation generator HTML files from the compressed file.

- To create a single-node CloudFormation template, do the following:
 - 1. In your web browser, to run the template generator, open the Single-Node-Cloud-Template-Gen.html file.
 - 2. In **Product**, select the required application and profile size.
 - 3. In **Instance Type**, select the required instance type.
 - 4. Click Generate template.
 - 5. Save the file to your computer.
- To create a multi-node CloudFormation template, do the following:
 - 1. In your web browser, run the template generator by opening the Multi-Node-Cloud-Template-Gen.html file.
 - 2. In **Product**, select the required application and profile size.
 - 3. In **Instance Type**, select the required instance type.
 - 4. In **Number of nodes**, set the number of servers required for the cluster.
 - In Number of subnets, set the number of subnets required for the cluster.
 You can set two or three subnets.
 - 6. Do one of the following:
 - To create new subnets for availability zones, select the Create subnets check box.
 - If you are planning to use the existing subnets, clear the Create subnets check box.
 - 7. Click Generate template.
 - 8. Save the file to your computer.

Next steps

Deploy the CloudFormation stack:

- For a single-node system, see <u>Deploying a single-node CloudFormation stack</u> on page 63.
- For a multi-node system, see <u>Deploying a multi-node CloudFormation stack</u> on page 67.

Deploying a single-node CloudFormation stack

About this task

Use this procedure to deploy a standalone instance by using a single-node CloudFormation template.

Before you begin

- Use standard Amazon Web Services procedures to create the required network setup, including Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) settings and Security Groups.
- Generate a single-node CloudFormation template.
- Ensure that you have network access to the Amazon VPC before deploying an AMI.

Procedure

1. Sign in to the AWS console and navigate to **Services** > **Management & Governance** > **CloudFormation**.

CloudFormation is an AWS service used to create a stack. A stack is a graph of objects such as EC2 instances and EBS volumes inside the Amazon cloud. CloudFormation is used to create the objects required for a single-node Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway system within a subnet of an existing virtual network.

- 2. On the CloudFormation page, click Create Stack.
- 3. On the Create Stack page, click Select Template.
- 4. When the template is ready, click Upload a template file.
- 5. Select the single-node yaml CloudFormation template file that you generated.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. On the Specify Details page, in the **Stack name** field, type the stack name.

The hostname for the node is derived from the stack name.

😵 Note:

The stack name must start with a letter and must contain letters, numbers, and dashes.

8. In **Amazon Machine Image ID**, type the Amazon Machine Image ID (AMI ID) of the instance you created.

For example, ami-fda9369d.

🕒 Tip:

To obtain the AMI ID of an image, go to Services > EC2 > Images > AMIs .

- 9. In the Network area, select the required Virtual Private Cloud and Subnet.
- 10. In **DNS domain**, type the name of the private DNS domain to use.

This domain name represents the domain name that clients use to access the service.

- 11. If the domain is a new domain in this VPC, set **Create domain** to **Y**. Otherwise, set it to **N**.
- 12. In the Security area, select **SSH key for administrator login**.
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. **(Optional)** On the Options page, in the Tag area, add tags to help you find and organize the AWS objects.

- 15. In the Permissions area, leave the default values for IAM Role and Enter role arn.
- 16. Click Next.
- 17. On the Review page, confirm the stack information.
- 18. Click Create to create the stack.

The system displays the Stacks page, which shows the stack creation status.

19. Wait until the status displays CREATE COMPLETE.

You can monitor the stack creation status and review the properties using the tabs at the bottom of the Stacks page.

- 20. Click the **Resources** tab.
- 21. Click the Physical ID of the EC2 instance for the node. For example, i-0fccb4a222a32dcc9.

The system displays the Instances page using a filter that displays the newly created AMI.

22. (Optional) Click the Actions menu to change the instance state.

For example, you can start, stop, or reboot the AMI virtual machine.

Next steps

To complete the first-login configuration, log in to the EC2 instance using the "admin" user name and the private key that you used when creating the CloudFormation stack.

Related links

<u>Logging in to the EC2 instance</u> on page 72 <u>Completing the first-login configuration</u> on page 72

AWS cluster deployments

Use the information in the following subsections for multi-node AWS clusters.

For traffic distribution, use the AWS load balancer. A virtual IP address for clusters is not available on AWS.

Important:

When deploying an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, you must use the same resource profile for each Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node in the cluster. Mixed resource profile clusters are not supported.

Creating and applying load balancer certificates

About this task

Load balancers only appear in the private DNS within AWS. Therefore, certificates generated by external certificate authorities might not work. Use this procedure to obtain a certificate from System Manager within AWS.

Procedure

- 1. On the System Manager web console, navigate to **Home > Services > Security > Certificates > Authority**.
- 2. Click Add End Entity and complete the settings in the following fields:
 - a. End Entity Profile: Type < INBOUND_OUTBOUND_TLS>.
 - b. Username: Type <FQDN of the load balancer>.

The FQDN of the load balancer is the service FQDN of the cluster. This domain name portion of the FQDN represents the domain name that clients use to access service. The FQDN must be the combination of the stack name followed by the domain. For example, if the stack name is <code>yourStack</code> and the domain is <code>your.domain.com</code>, then the FQDN is <code>yourStack.your.domain.com</code>.

😵 Note:

The stack name must start with a letter and must contain only letters, numbers, or dashes. This stack name must be used during multi-node CloudFormation.

- c. **Password**: Type your password.
- d. Confirm Password: Retype your password.
- e. CN, Common name: Type <FQDN of the load balancer>.
- f. Token: Select the PEM file.
 - Note:

The remaining fields are optional. For more information, see *Administering Avaya Aura*[®] *System Manager*.

- 3. Click Add.
- 4. Navigate to Home > Services > Security > Certificates > Authority > Public Web.

The system displays the EJBCA public page.

- 5. Click Create Keystore.
- 6. In **Username**, type the FQDN of the load balancer.
- 7. In **Password**, type the End Entity password that you created earlier.
- 8. Click OK.

The system displays the EJBCA Token Certificate Enrollment page.

9. In Key length, select the required key length.

A length of 2048 bits is recommended.

- 10. Click Enroll and select a text editor to view the certificate.
- 11. Save the PEM file to your computer.
- 12. Sign in to the AWS console and navigate to **Services > Security, Identity & Compliance > Certificate Manager**.

13. Click Import a certificate.

The system displays a form with three fields: **Certificate Body**, **Certificate private key**, and **Certificate chain**.

14. Open the PEM file you saved earlier with a text editor and do the following:

😵 Note:

You must include the BEGIN and END labels for each section that you paste into the form.

- a. In the Private Key section, copy the string from ----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY---to ----END PRIVATE KEY---- and paste it into the Certificate private key field.
- b. In the Certificate section, copy the first certificate string from ----BEGIN CERTIFICATE---- to ----END CERTIFICATE---- and paste it into the Certificate body field.
- c. In the Certificate section, copy the second certificate string from ----BEGIN CERTIFICATE---- to ----END CERTIFICATE---- and paste it into the Certificate chain field.
- 15. Click Review and import.
- 16. Click Import.

The system imports the certificate and displays the status and details of the certificate.

17. Copy and save the ARN value in the Details section.

The ARN is required for the **Load balancer certificate ARN** field during the multi-node CloudFormation deployment.

Deploying a multi-node CloudFormation stack

About this task

Use multi-node CloudFormation to create a cluster.

😵 Note:

You cannot expand an AWS single node into an AWS cluster. Create AWS clusters from the beginning. However, after an AWS cluster is created, it can be expanded. For more information, see <u>Expanding an existing cluster</u> on page 69.

Before you begin

- Use standard Amazon Web Services procedures to create the required network setup, including Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) settings and Security Groups.
- Ensure that you have network access to the Amazon VPC before deploying an AMI.
- Create a multi-node CloudFormation template as described in <u>Creating CloudFormation</u> <u>templates</u> on page 62.
- Create and apply load balancer certificates. The ARN value created during the certificate import is required for this procedure.

Procedure

- 1. Sign in to the Amazon Web Services Management console.
- 2. Navigate to Services > Management & Governance > CloudFormation.
- 3. Click Create Stack.

The AWS EC2 Management console displays the first page of the Create stack wizard.

- 4. When the template is ready, click **Upload a template file**.
- 5. Select the multi-node yaml CloudFormation template file you generated.
- 6. Click Next.

The system displays the Specify Details page.

7. In **Stack name**, type a name for the stack.

This stack name must match the stack name portion of the FQDN of the load balancer.

8. In **Amazon Machine Image ID**, type the Amazon Machine Image ID (AMI ID) of the image you imported.

For example, ami-fda9369d.

🕒 Tip:

You can obtain the AMI ID of an image from the EC2 AMI page. On a separate browser tab, navigate to **Services** > **EC2** > **Images** > **AMIs**.

- 9. In the Network area, select the required Virtual Private Cloud.
- 10. Do one of the following depending on whether you select the **Configure subnets** check box in step <u>2</u> on page 63 when creating the multi-node CloudFormation template:
 - If you select the check box, configure the required IPv4 address range in each subnet CIDR block field.

In CIDR notation, the number of bits in the network portion of the address follows a slash. For example, 10.143.11.192/28. The address range for the subnets must fall within the address range of the VPC and must not overlap any existing subnet within the VPC.

• If you did not select the check box, select the required subnets from each Subnet field.

😵 Note:

When using existing subnets, each subnet must be in a different availability zone.

11. In **DNS domain**, type the name of the private DNS domain to use.

This domain name must match the domain name used in the FQDN of the load balancer.

12. If the domain is a new domain in this VPC, set **Create domain** to **Y**.

Otherwise, set it to N.

13. In the Security area, select **SSH key for administrator login**.

14. Copy the ARN saved in the Details section and paste it into the **Load balancer certificate ARN** field.

For information on copying the ARN, see <u>Creating and applying load balancer</u> <u>certificates</u> on page 65.

15. Click Next.

The system displays the Options page.

- 16. (Optional) In the Tags area, add tags to help you find and organize the AWS objects.
- 17. In the Permissions area, keep the default values for both IAM Role and Enter role arn.
- 18. Click Next.

The system displays the Review page.

19. Click **Create** to create the stack.

The system displays the Stacks page, which shows the stack creation status.

20. Wait until the status displays CREATE COMPLETE.

You can monitor the stack creation status and review the properties using the tabs at the bottom of the Stacks page.

- 21. Click the **Resources** tab.
- 22. Click the Physical ID of the EC2 instance for the node. For example, i-0fccb4a222a32dcc9.

The system displays the Instances page using a filter that displays the newly created AMI.

23. (Optional) Click the Actions menu to change the instance state.

For example, you can start, stop, or reboot the AMI virtual machine.

Next steps

To complete the first-login configuration, log in to the EC2 instance using the "admin" user name and the private key that you used when creating the CloudFormation stack.

Related links

<u>Logging in to the EC2 instance</u> on page 72 <u>Completing the first-login configuration</u> on page 72

Expanding an existing cluster

About this task

An existing AWS cluster can be expanded with additional nodes by updating the stack that represents the cluster.

😵 Note:

You cannot expand a single AWS node into an AWS cluster. You must create AWS clusters from the beginning.

Procedure

Add nodes to a cluster by updating the CloudFormation stack that represents the cluster.

Creating a hybrid cloud for client access

About this task

Servers deployed in AWS are contained within a Virtual Private Cloud (VPC). End user clients are present within a separate network but require access to the servers in AWS. You must create a VPN to enable client access.

You must configure VPN gateways at both ends of the tunnel:

- The address range assigned to the VPC must route to the gateway on your side of the tunnel.
- Within AWS, the address range that clients use must route to the AWS-side gateway.

Use this procedure to configure AWS so that the address range that clients use routes to the AWS-side of the gateway.

Before you begin

- Deploy the required EC2 instances.
- Assign an IP address range to the VPC that does not overlap with any subnet in your network.

Procedure

- 1. Sign in to the AWS console.
- 2. Navigate to **Services > Management Tools > CloudFormation** and select the required stack.
- 3. Click the **Resources** tab.
- 4. Click the physical ID link for one of the nodes.

The system displays a page with the details of the node.

- 5. Copy the value from the **Subnet ID** field of the Description tab. For example, subnet-99942eff.
- 6. Navigate to Services > Networking & Content Delivery > VPC > Subnets.
- 7. Paste the subnet ID into the Search Subnets filter.
- 8. Select the subnet that the system displays.
- 9. Select the row that contains the previously noted ID in the Route Table ID column.
- 10. Select the **Route Table** tab.
- 11. Click the route table ID link that is located next to the **Edit** button. For example, rtbbc53a2db.

- 12. Select the route that the system displays.
- 13. Select the Routes tab.
- 14. Click Edit.
- 15. Click Add another route to add each required client address range and do the following:
 - a. In the Destination column, enter the address range.
 - b. In the Target column, select an AWS-side gateway that can reach the destination.
- 16. Click Save.

Configuring on-premise DNS resolution of VPC addresses

About this task

This configuration allows on-premise clients to access the servers hosted in the AWS VPC. Use this procedure to configure your local, on-premise DNS server with a new DNS forwarding zone so that client DNS resolution requests are forwarded to a DNS server located within the VPC. The DNS server located within the VPC then performs the final address resolution to the servers hosted in the AWS VPC.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have:

- Access to your on-premise DNS server so that you can add a new DNS forwarding zone.
- Enabled your corporate firewall to permit outgoing UDP traffic toward the AWS VPC.
- Routes on your AWS VPC VPN gateway that direct UDP port 53 traffic from the enterprise toward the VPC.
- The IP address of the DNS server in the AWS VPC.
- A list of the VPC domains that the on-premise DNS server must resolve to the AWS DNS server. For example, if your VPC servers must resolve server.example.com and server.example.net, then the list of required VPC domains is example.com and example.net.
- A test FQDN that is configured in the VPC DNS.

Procedure

- 1. Log on to your local on-premises DNS server.
- 2. Add a new "Forward Zone" or "Forward Lookup Zone" DNS by following the instructions provided by your DNS server manufacturer.
- 3. Add a new forward zone with the following details for each required VPC domain:
 - a. A zone name: Use the same name as the domain name. For example, example.com.
 - b. The forwarding address: Use the IP address and port of the DNS server in the AWS VPC. For example, 10.1.2.3@53.

- c. Forward First: Enable Forward First if your DNS server supports this feature. This feature causes resolution requests for the zone to be forwarded to the VPC DNS server before attempting to resolve them locally.
- 4. Enable the DNS server changes by reloading the configuration or restarting the DNS server.
- 5. Verify that the DNS resolution completes by performing a lookup of the test FQDN using a DNS resolution utility, such as nslookup or dig.

For example, you can run the following nslookup command:

```
> nslookup server.example.com
Server: 192.168.0.1
Address: 192.168.0.1#53
Non-authoritative answer:
Name: server.example.com
Address: 10.1.2.165
```

Logging in to the EC2 instance

Procedure

Log in to the EC2 instance using the SSH console or PuTTY.

- Important:
 - Use the "admin" user name to log in to the instance.
 - You must use the private key from the key pair that you used during CloudFormation stack creation. If you use PuTTY, the key must be in the .ppk format.

When you use the private key, you do not need to enter a password to access the EC2 instance.

For information about configuring and using PuTTY, see <u>Connect to your Linux instance from</u> <u>Windows using PuTTY</u>.

Completing the first-login configuration

About this task

The first time you access a newly deployed EC2, you must complete a one-time system procedure to accept the license agreement, configure the OS, and select network preferences.

Before you begin

• Ensure that you use the private key from the key pair that you used during CloudFormation stack creation to establish the an SSH connection.

If you use PuTTY, the private key must be in the . ${\tt ppk}$ format.

• Access the EC2 instance by logging in using PuTTY or SSH from the command line. To access the instance, use the IP address of the instance.
Procedure

- 1. When prompted to enter the user name, enter admin.
- 2. Do the following when you see the license agreement banner, which is displayed when you log in for the first time:
 - a. Press Enter to display the license agreement.
 - b. Press the Space bar to navigate through the license agreement.
 - c. When prompted, type yes to accept the license agreement.
- 3. To configure the NTP servers, do one of the following:
 - Press Enter to accept the default Amazon NTP time servers.
 - Enter one or more comma separated NTP server IP addresses or FQDNs and then press Enter.

Important:

The NTP servers that you configure must be reachable from this server. The default Amazon NTP time serves are on the Internet and might not be reachable.

- 4. Select your time zone preferences.
- 5. Review the summary of your selections and type one of the following:
 - y: To apply the settings to the system.
 - n: To make changes to your selections.

Next steps

Install the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application software using the app install command as described in Installing the Avaya Aura Web Gateway on page 98.

Complete the required configuration and commissioning procedures after the initial installation. If you are installing a cluster, you must follow the instructions for using an external load balancer.

Software-only deployments

You can deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application using your own virtual or physical machines and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway supports the following deployment options:

- VMware virtualization environment. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway supports the following platforms:
 - ESXi: Releases 6.0, 6.5, 6.7, and 7.0.
 - Appliance Virtualization Platform (AVP): Releases 8.1.2 and 8.1.3.
- Amazon Web Services (AWS) virtualization environment.

• Physical servers.

After installing and configuring the operating system, you must install the system layer on virtual machines. After that, use the common installation, configuration, and administration tasks to complete the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway deployment.

Software-only deployment in VMware-based virtualization environment

Software-only installation checklist for VMware-based environment

The following checklist outlines the tasks that you must perform when deploying Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application on your own physical servers or in VMware-based environment.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Ensure that virtual machines that you plan to use to deploy Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway comply with the requirements for software-only installation.	See the requirements in <u>VMware software</u> requirements on page 30 and <u>Resource</u> profile specifications for Avaya Aura Web <u>Gateway on VMware</u> on page 30.	
2 Download the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway software-only installation package from PLDS.		The software-only installation package includes the following files:Software-only system layer installer.	
		 Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application installer. 	
		The package file name has the csa- swonly- <aawg_version>.tgz format.</aawg_version>	
3	Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.6.	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Release 3.9 requires RHEL 7.6. For more information about installation, see the official Red hat documentation. Avaya also recommends that you install the latest security updates on RHEL.	
4	Create disk partitioning on RHEL.	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway requires specific disk partitioning to organize data storage. For more information about creating disk partitioning, see <u>Creating disk partitioning for</u> <u>software-only deployments</u> on page 76 and <u>Disk partitions for software-only</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 76.	

Table continues...

No.	Task	Notes	~
5	Create a non-root Linux user.	The installation and administration of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server is more secure when performed by non-root users with sudo privileges. For more information, see <u>Creating administrative users</u> on page 78.	
6	Enable the YUM package manager on RHEL.	The YUM package manager is used to install the required packages. For more information about enabling YUM, see the Red Hat YUM documentation.	
7	Enable FIPS mode (optional).	For software-only deployments, you can only enable FIPS mode before installing the system layer. For more information, see <u>Enabling FIPS for software-only systems on</u> page 80, <u>Additional packages required for</u> <u>FIPS mode on page 81, and Enabling the</u> <u>Haveged service</u> on page 82.	
8	Do one of the following to manage additional RHEL packages:	For more information, see <u>RHEL packages</u> <u>management</u> on page 79.	
	 Register your RHEL instance to the Red Hat subscription. Create a local repository for RPM installation or updates. 	Registering your RHEL instance to the Red Hat subscription is the preferred option.	
9	Install the software-only system layer on your RHEL.	The system layer is low-level software that forms the required operational environment for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.	
		For more information, see <u>Installing the</u> system layer on page 82.	
10	Ensure that:NTP service is up and running.System Manager is reachable from your virtual machine.	Perform these checks to ensure that the system layer is installed successfully so you can install the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application. For more information, see <u>Checking the NTP</u> <u>service status</u> on page 84 and <u>Checking</u> <u>the connection to System Manager</u> on page 84	

Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation

When you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only solution, you must use the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.6. For details about obtaining and installing RHEL 7.6, see the Red Hat website <u>https://www.redhat.com</u>.

After obtaining RHEL 7.6, do the following:

1. Install the RHEL 7.6 operating system by using the Red Hat installation procedures.

Important:

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway requires specific disk partitioning. You can create the required data disks and physical volumes for data disks during or after RHEL 7.6 installation using the values provided in <u>Disk partitions for software-only</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 76.

2. Install the latest critical security updates.

For update procedures, see Red Hat documentation. You can install security updates by using the YUM package manager.

Disk partitions for software-only deployments

The following table shows Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway disk partitions and their logical volumes with appropriate sizes:

Disk	Disk size (GB)	Mount Point
Disk 1:	42	-
• /dev/sda for VMware		
• /dev/xvda for AWS		
Disk 2:	60	/var/log/Avaya
• /dev/sdb for VMware		
• /dev/xvdb for AWS		
Disk 3:	20	/media/data
• /dev/sdc for VMware		
/dev/xvdc for AWS		
Disk 4:	10	/media/cassandra
• /dev/sdd for VMware		
• /dev/xvdd for AWS		

Creating disk partitioning for software-only deployments

About this task

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway requires a specific disk layout that includes several disk partitions and logical volumes. Use this procedure to create appropriate disk partitioning.

Before you begin

• Create physical volumes with the required disk size values. For more information, see <u>Disk</u> <u>partitions for software-only deployments</u> on page 76.

Install RHEL on virtual machines.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following commands to create the required directories:

```
mkdir -p /var/log/Avaya
mkdir -p /media/data
mkdir -p /media/cassandra
```

- 3. Depending on your virtual environment, do the following to create the required physical volumes and volume groups for these volumes:
 - In a VMware virtual environment, run the following commands:

```
pvcreate -f /dev/sdb
vgcreate disk2_vg /dev/sdb
pvcreate -f /dev/sdc
vgcreate disk3_vg /dev/sdc
pvcreate -f /dev/sdd
vgcreate disk4 vg /dev/sdd
```

• In an virtual AWS environment, run the following commands:

```
pvcreate -f /dev/xvdb
vgcreate disk2_vg /dev/xvdb
pvcreate -f /dev/xvdc
vgcreate disk3_vg /dev/xvdc
pvcreate -f /dev/xvdd
vgcreate disk4 vg /dev/xvdd
```

4. Run the following commands to create logical volumes in the volume groups:

```
lvcreate -1100%FREE -n application_log /dev/disk2_vg
lvcreate -1100%FREE -n data /dev/disk3_vg
lvcreate -1100%FREE -n cassandra /dev/disk4 vg
```

5. Run the following commands to create a file system for the /dev/sdb partition and mount the file system:

```
mkfs.xfs /dev/disk2_vg/application_log
mount /dev/disk2_vg/application_log /var/log/Avaya
echo "/dev/disk2_vg/application_log /var/log/Avaya xfs defaults 0 0" >> /etc/fstab
```

6. Run the following commands to create file systems for the /dev/sdc partition and mount the file system:

mkfs.xfs /dev/disk3_vg/data
mount /dev/disk3_vg/data /media/data
echo "/dev/disk3_vg/data /media/data xfs defaults 0 0" >> /etc/fstab

7. Run the following commands to create file systems for the /dev/sdd partition and mount the file system:

```
mkfs.xfs /dev/disk4_vg/cassandra
mount /dev/disk4_vg/cassandra /media/cassandra
echo "/dev/disk4_vg/cassandra /media/cassandra xfs defaults 0 0" >> /etc/fstab
```

Creating administrative users

About this task

You must use a non-root Linux user with sudo privileges to install the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application. The User ID (UID) of the Linux user that performs the installation must be the same on all nodes in the cluster.

This procedure describes how to add users and groups. For a clustered deployment of Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, perform the steps described in this procedure on every node in the cluster.

Before you begin

Deploy Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.6 on virtual machines.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine with deployed RHEL 7.6 as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following command to create a group for the administrative user:

groupadd -g 4001 <admin_group>

In this command, <admin group> is a group name of your choice. For example:

groupadd -g 4001 admingrp

Important:

For Group ID (GID), you must use 4001.

3. Run the following command to add an administrative user in the new administrative group:

useradd -g <admin_group> -u 4001 <admin_name>

In this command, <admin_group> is the name of the group you created in the previous step, and <admin_name> is an administrative user name of your choice. For example:

useradd -g admingrp -u 4001 aadsadmin

Important:

For User ID (UID), you must use 4001.

4. Run the following command to create a password for the new administrative user and then enter the password:

passwd <admin_name>

In this command, <admin name> is the administrative user name. For example:

passwd aadsadmin

5. Run the following command to provide sudo privileges for the new administrative user:

usermod -aG wheel <admin_name>

For example:

usermod -aG wheel aadsadmin

RHEL packages management

The system layer requires additional RHEL packages, which are not available by default. To obtain these packages, you can do one of the following:

• Subscribe to the Red Hat subscription.

Avaya recommends this option. For more information about the subscription process, see the Red Hat website <u>https://www.redhat.com</u>.

Important:

- If you use the Red Hat Network subscription, you must enable additional RPMs from the RHEL CLI as described in <u>Installing optional RHEL RPMs</u> on page 79.
- For AWS software-only deployments, if you use the Red Hat Network subscription, you must assign a public IP address to each of your AWS instances using the AWS Elastic IP service.
- Create a local repository for RPM installation or updates.

Installing optional RHEL RPMs

About this task

If you subscribe to the Red Hat subscription, you must enable the following RHEL repositories before installing the system layer:

- rhel-7-server-rpms
- rhel-7-server-optional-rpms

These repositories contain RPMs that are required for system layer installation.

Before you begin

Subscribe to the Red Hat subscription.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the RHEL virtual machine as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following command to view the enabled repositories:

yum repolist

- 3. Ensure that the command output contains the following entries in the "repo id" column:
 - rhel-7-server-rpms/x86-64 for rhel-7-server-rpms.
 - rhel-7-server-optional-rpms/x68 64 for rhel-7-server-optional-rpms
- 4. If the command output does not contain the required entries, do the following:
 - To enable the rhel-7-server-rpms repository, run the following command: subscription-manager repos --enable=rhel-7-server-rpms
 - To enable the rhel-7-server-optional-rpms repository, run the following command: subscription-manager repos --enable=rhel-7-server-optional-rpms

Enabling FIPS for software-only systems

About this task

FIPS is a cryptographic security standard. Use this procedure if your enterprise requires FIPScompliant cryptographic algorithms only.

For software-only installations, FIPS mode is enabled at the operating system level before installing the system layer. If FIPS is enabled in the operating system, then Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is installed in FIPS mode. Otherwise, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is installed in non-FIPS mode. FIPS installation is only supported for new installations. You cannot upgrade a non-FIPS system to a FIPS system. If you want to enable FIPS on a non-FIPS system or disable FIPS on a FIPS system, you must uninstall the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application first, change FIPS mode, and then re-install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Important:

- You must enable FIPS before installing the system layer.
- The following features are unavailable in FIPS mode:
 - OAuth / SAML authorization
 - Onboard Open LDAP

😵 Note:

- If FIPS mode is enabled, you must use the Secure LDAP (LDAPS) protocol to configure LDAP.
- In cluster deployments, if FIPS mode is enabled, SSL encryption for internode communication between the database servers on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes is enabled by default.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine as an administrator using an SSH connection.
- 2. Open the /etc/ssh/sshd config file in a text editor with sudo privileges.

For example, to open the file in vi, run the sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd_config command.

3. Add the following three entries to the file:

```
Ciphers aes256-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes128-ctr
MACs hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256,hmac-sha1
Kexalgorithms ecdh-sha2-nistp256,ecdh-sha2-nistp384,ecdh-sha2-nistp521,diffie-
hellman-group-exchange-sha256,diffie-hellman-group16-sha512,diffie-hellman-
group18-sha512,diffie-hellman-group14-sha256,diffie-hellman-group-exchange-
sha1,diffie-hellman-group-exchange-sha1
```

- 4. Save the /etc/ssh/sshd config file.
- 5. Open the /etc/ssh/ssh_config file in a text editor with sudo privileges.

For example, to open the file in vi, run the sudo vi /etc/ssh/ssh_config command.

6. Add the following two entries to the file:

```
Ciphers aes256-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes128-ctr
MACs hmac-sha2-512,hmac-sha2-256
```

- 7. Save the /etc/ssh/sshd config file.
- 8. Complete the steps listed in the <u>Federal standards and regulations</u> section of the Red Hat documentation.

Next steps

- Install the packages listed in Additional packages required for FIPS mode on page 81.
- Ensure that the Haveged service is running on the virtual machine. For more information, see <u>Enabling the Haveged service</u> on page 82.

Related links

Enabling FIPS mode on page 94

Additional packages required for FIPS mode

If you want to use Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in FIPS mode, you must install the following packages:

- haveged-1.9.1-1.el7.x86 64.rpm or later.
- tomcat-native-1.2.17-1.el7.x86 64.rpm or later.

These packages are available from the Extra Packages for Enterprise Linux (EPEL) Fedora Special Interest Group.

For information about installing packages from the EPEL respistory see the <u>EPEL FAQ</u>. You must only install these packages if you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application.

Installing packages required for FIPS mode manually

About this task

If you do not have the EPEL repository on your RHEL 7.6, you can install the packages required to enable FIPS mode manually.

Before you begin

Download the following packages on your local machine:

- haveged-1.9.1-1.el7.x86 64.rpm or later
- tomcat-native-1.2.17-1.el7.x86 64.rpm or later

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Upload the packages to the virtual machine to the /root directory.

Use a file transfer program of your choice, such as SFTP, SCP, or WinSCP.

3. Run the following commands:

```
rpm -ivh /root/<HAVEGED_PACKAGE_NAME>
rpm -ivh /root/<TOMCAT-NATIVE PACKAGE NAME>
```

For example:

rpm -ivh /root/haveged-1.9.1-1.el7.x86_64.rpm

Enabling the Haveged service

About this task

Haveged is a random number generator based on the HAVEGE algorithm designed for the use on Linux systems. If you plan to use Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway in FIPS mode, you must enable the Haveged service.

This procedure applies to software-only deployments and is not required for OVA-based deployments.

Before you begin

Install the Haveged package.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine as an administrator using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following command to start the Havaged service:

systemctl start haveged

3. Run the following command to start Havged automatically after each system restart:

systemctl enable haveged

Installing the system layer

About this task

The system layer is low-level software that provides the required operational environment for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application.

During the installation process, the system downloads the required packages from the remote repository. The package installation might take up to 10 minutes depending on your network bandwidth.

Before you begin

- Install RHEL 7.6 on virtual machines.
- Create disk partitioning as described in <u>Creating disk partitioning for software-only</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 76.
- Enable the YUM package management on RHEL. For more information, see the Red Hat documentation on the https://www.redhat.com website.
- Create at least one non-root administrative user as described in <u>Creating administrative</u> <u>users</u> on page 78.
- Download the csa-swonly-<AAWG_VERSION>.tgz software-only installation package from PLDS.
- Obtain the FQDN of the IP address of a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server.

😵 Note:

Avaya recommends using the NTP servers of your organization instead of public NTP servers.

 If you are planning to use FIPS, enable it as described in <u>Enabling FIPS for software-only</u> <u>systems</u> on page 80. You cannot enable FIPS mode during or after Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation.

Procedure

1. Upload the software-only installation package on the virtual machine to the /root directory.

Use a file transfer program of your choice, such as SFTP, SCP or WinSCP.

- 2. Log in to the virtual machine as the root user.
- 3. To extract the content of the installation package, run the following command:

tar -xzf csa-swonly-<AAWG_VERSION>.tgz

For example: tar -xzf csa-swonly-3.9.0.0.x.tgz

The /root/csa-swonly-AAWG_RELEASE/ directory contains the following files:

- The system layer package in TGZ archive ucapp-swonly-system-</VERSION>.tgz.
- The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application binary csa-<AAWG_RELEASE>.bin.
- 4. Go to the directory with the extracted installation package:

cd csa-swonly-<AAWG VERSION>

5. To extract the content of the archive with the system layer installation files, run the following command:

```
tar -xzf ucapp-swonly-system-<SYSTEM_LAYER_VERSION>.tgz
```

For example: tar - xzf ucapp-swonly-system-1.0.0.0.1.tgz

6. Go to the directory with the extracted system layer package:

cd ucapp-swonly-system-<SYSTEM LAYER VERSION>

7. Run the following command to install the system layer:

./swOnlyUpdate.sh --install

- 8. When the system prompts you to enable the Enhanced Access Security Gateway (EASG) functionality, do one of the following:
 - Enter yes to enable EASG.

The EASG functionality enables Avaya support personnel to access your Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway system and resolve product issues in real time. Avaya recommends enabling EASG during installation.

• Enter no if you do not want to enable the EASG functionality.

If you select no, you can enable it later if required.

- 9. When the system prompts you, provide the IP address or FQDN of the NTP server.
- 10. After the system reboots, run one of the following commands to ensure that system layer is installed:
 - sys versions
 - /root/csa-swonly-<AAWG_RELEASE>/ucapp-swonly-system-<SYSTEM LAYER VERSION>/swOnlyUpdate.sh --status

Next steps

- · Ensure that:
 - The NTP service is running.
 - System Manager and Session Manager are reachable.
- Install the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application.

Checking the NTP service status

About this task

For the optimal functioning of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server, the local system clock must have an accuracy of 100 milliseconds or less. You must ensure that the NTP service is running on the virtual machine before installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine CLI as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following command to verify that the NTP service is running:

systemctl status ntpd

Ensure that the system displays active (running).

3. If the NTP service is not running, run the following command:

```
systemctl start ntpd
```

4. Run the following command to verify that the system clock is synchronized:

ntpstat

- 5. Ensure that the system displays synchronized to NTP server.
- 6. If the system clock is not synchronized, do the following:
 - a. Run the following commands:

```
systemctl stop ntpd
ntpd -gq
systemctl start ntpd
```

b. Run the ntpstat command again to verify that the system clock is synchronized.

Checking the connection to System Manager

About this task

You must ensure that System Manager is reachable before installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine CLI as an administrator using an SSH connection.
- 2. Run the following command:

```
ping -c 10 <SMGR_ADDRESS>
```

In this command, <SMGR_ADDRESS> is the FQDN of System Manager.

If System Manager is reachable, the system displays the following output for the command:

10 packets transmitted, 10 received, 0% packet loss

Software-only deployment on Amazon Web Services

Software-only installation checklist for Amazon Web Services

The following checklist outlines the tasks that you must perform when deploying Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application in an AWS environment.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Ensure that the virtual machines that you plan to use to deploy Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway comply with the requirements for software-only installation.	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway supports c4.xlarge and c4.2xlarge AWS instance types. For more information, see <u>Resources</u> <u>profile specifications for Avaya Aura Web</u> <u>Gateway on Amazon Web Services</u> on page 31.	
2	Prepare your AWS instance for software-only installation.	See <u>Prerequisites for software-only</u> <u>deployment on AWS</u> on page 87.	
3	Download the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway software-only installation package from PLDS.	 The software-only installation package includes the following files: Software-only system layer installer. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application installer. The package file name has the csa-swonly-<aawg version="">.tgz format.</aawg> 	
4	Create security groups on AWS.	See <u>Creating security groups</u> on page 87.	
5	Install Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.6 on AWS.	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Release 3.9 requires RHEL 7.6. For more information about installation, see <u>Installing Red Hat</u> <u>Enterprise Linux 7.6 on AWS</u> on page 89.	

Table continues...

No.	Task	Notes	~
6	Create disk partitioning on RHEL.	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway requires specific disk partitioning to organize data storage. For more information about creating disk partitioning, see <u>Creating disk partitioning for</u> <u>software-only deployments</u> on page 76 and <u>Disk partitions for software-only</u> <u>deployments</u> on page 76.	
7	Enable root access to RHEL.	RHEL deployed on AWS does not have the root user enabled by default. For more information, see <u>Enabling root access</u> on page 91.	
8	Create a non-root Linux user.	The installation and administration of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server is more secure when performed by non-root users with sudo privileges. For more information, see <u>Creating administrative users</u> on page 78.	
9	Enable the YUM package manager on RHEL.	The YUM package manager is used to install the required packages. For more information about enabling YUM, see the Red Hat YUM documentation.	
10	Enable FIPS mode (optional).	For software-only deployments, you can only enable FIPS mode before installing the system layer. For more information, see <u>Enabling FIPS for software-only systems on</u> page 80, <u>Additional packages required for</u> <u>FIPS mode on page 81, and Enabling the</u> <u>Haveged service</u> on page 82.	
11	Do one of the following to manage additional RHEL packages:	For more information, see <u>RHEL packages</u> <u>management</u> on page 79.	
	 Register your RHEL instance to the Red Hat subscription. Create a local repository for RPM installation or undates 	Registering your RHEL instance to the Red Hat subscription is the preferred option.	
12	Prepare you RHEL system for installing the software-only system layer.	See <u>Prerequisites for installing the system</u> <u>layer on AWS</u> on page 91.	
13	Install the software-only system layer on your RHEL.	The system layer is low-level software that forms the required operational environment for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.	
		For more information, see <u>Installing the</u> system layer on page 82.	

Table continues...

No.	Task	Notes	~
14	In cluster deployments, create target groups for the load balancer.	See <u>Creating target groups</u> on page 92.	
15	In cluster deployments, configure Elastic load balancers.	See <u>Creating and configuring Elastic load</u> <u>balancers</u> on page 93.	
16	Ensure that:The NTP service is up and running.System Manager is reachable from	Perform these checks to ensure that the system layer is installed successfully so you can install the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application.	
	your virtual machine.	For more information, see <u>Checking the NTP</u> <u>service status</u> on page 84 and <u>Checking the</u> <u>connection to System Manager</u> on page 84.	

Prerequisites for software-only deployment on AWS

- Use standard Amazon Web Services procedures to create the required network setup, including Virtual Private Cloud and subnet settings.
- Add records with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway front-end FQDN to your DNS or AWS Route 53 hosted zone.
- Ensure that you have an NTP server. You can deploy your own NTP server or use the NTP server provided by AWS.
- Create key pairs. For more information, see Creating a key pair on page 58.
- If you are deploying an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, create load balancer certificates for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway virtual FQDN.

For more information, see Creating and applying load balancer certificates on page 65.

Creating security groups

About this task

AWS uses security groups to control inbound and outbound traffic. For software-only installation, you must create the following security groups:

• Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway security group.

This security group uses the primary eth0 interface.

• Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway load balance security group.

Procedure

- 1. On the Amazon Web Services Management console, navigate to **Services** > **EC2** > **Security group**.
- 2. Click Create Security Group.
- 3. In **Security group name**, type a name of your choice.

For example: AAWG security group eth0

- 4. (Optional) In Description, type a description for the group.
- 5. From **VPC**, select the Virtual Private Cloud that you plan to use for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.
- 6. Configure the inbound and outbound traffic rules for the group.

Fore more information, see the "Traffic rules" section for the appropriate group.

7. Repeat steps <u>2</u> on page 87 to <u>6</u> on page 88 to create the additional required security groups.

Traffic rules for the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway security group

Inbound rules

Туре	Protocol	Port range	Source
Custom TCP	ТСР	31415	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8447	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	7001	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8468	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8543	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	7000	0.0.0/0
HTTPS	ТСР	443	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8457	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	3268	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8448	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	21000	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	9999	0.0.0/0
SSH	ТСР	22	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8440	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	2009	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8458	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	3269	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8445	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	161	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8442	0.0.0/0

Outbound rules

Туре	Protocol	Port range	Source
All traffic	All	All	0.0.0/0
All traffic	All	All	::/0

Traffic rules for the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway load balancer security group

Inbound rules

Туре	Protocol	Port range	Source
Custom TCP	ТСР	8440	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8443	0.0.0/0
HTTPS	ТСР	443	0.0.0/0
Custom TCP	ТСР	8445	0.0.0/0

Outbound rules

Туре	Protocol	Port range	Source
All traffic	All	All	0.0.0/0
All traffic	All	All	::/0

Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6 on AWS

About this task

Use this procedure to deploy the RHEL 7.6 operating system on your AWS instance. If you are deploying a cluster, repeat this procedure for each Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node.

Before you begin

Create security groups.

Procedure

- 1. On the Amazon Web Services Management console, navigate to **Services** > **EC2**.
- 2. Click Launch instance.
- 3. On the Choose an Amazon Machine Image page, in the left pane, click **Community AMIs** and then click the **Red Hat** check box.
- 4. From the list of operating systems, select the **RHEL 7.6** and then click **Select**.

The following is an example of the RHEL 7.6 name: **RHEL-7.6_HVM-GA-20181017-**X86_64-0-hOURLY2-gp2

- 5. On the Choose an Instance Type page, select either the **c4.xlarge** or **c4.2xlarge** type depending on your deployment and then click **Next**.
- 6. On the Configure Instance Details page, configure the settings as follows:
 - a. In Network, select the VPC that you configured for your deployment.
 - b. In Subnet, select the subnet that you configured for your deployment.
 - c. In Domain join directory, select one of the following:
 - If you plan to use your own DNS server, select **No directory**.
 - If you plan to use the AWS Route 53 for DNS, select an appropriate domain from Route 53.

- d. In the Network interfaces area, create the ethernet network interface with the eth0 name and the IP address of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node.
- e. For other parameters, keep the default values.
- 7. On the Add Storage page, create four EBS volumes using the values provided in <u>Disk</u> partitions for software-only deployments on page 76.

For Volume type, use General Purpose SSD (gp2) for all volumes.

The following image shows the configured volumes:

Step 4: Add Storage Your instance will be launched with the following storage device settings. You can attach additional EBS volumes and instance store volumes to your instance, or adit the settings of the root volume. You can also attach additional EBS volumes after launching an instance, but not instance store volumes. Learn more about storage options in Amazon EC2.							
Volume Type (j)	Device (j)	Snapshot (j)	Size (GiB) (j	Volume Type (j)	IOPS (j)	Throughput (MB/s) (i)	Delete on Termination (j)
Root	/dev/sda1	snap-0f9a46653a138be40	125	General Purpose SSD (gp2) ~	375 / 3000	N/A	
EBS ~	/dev/sdb ~	Search (case-insensit	70	General Purpose SSD (gp2) ~	210 / 3000	N/A	
EBS ~	/dev/sdc v	Search (case-insensit	40	General Purpose SSD (gp2) ~	120 / 3000	N/A	
EBS ~	/dev/sdd ~	Search (case-insensit	10	General Purpose SSD (gp2) ~	100 / 3000	N/A	
Add New Volume							

- 8. (Optional) On the Add Tags page, add tags for the management instance and volumes.
- 9. On the Configure Security Group page, do the following:
 - a. In Assign a security group, select Select an existing security group.
 - b. Select the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway security group that you created when configuring security groups.
- 10. On the Review Instance Launch page, verify the instance settings and then click Launch.

Next steps

If you are using your own DNS server or a public DNS server, configure DNS settings as described in <u>Configuring DNS settings on RHEL</u> on page 90.

Configuring DNS settings on RHEL

About this task

If do not use the Route 53 DNS service, you must provide the IP address of a DNS server that you plan to use on RHEL.

Before you begin

Install RHEL on AWS.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the RHEL as the root user using an SSH connection.
- 2. Open the /etc/resolv.conf file in a text editor.

For example: vi /etc/resolv.conf

3. Add the following entry to the file:

nameserver <DNS ADDRESS>

In this entry, <DNS_ADDRESS> is the IP address of the DNS server that you plan to use in your deployment.

- 4. (Optional) Do one of the following:
 - If the file does not contain the search entry, add the following entry:

search <DOMAIN NAME>

In this entry, <DOMAIN_NAME> is your domain name. For example: search mycompany.com

• If the file contains the search entry, enter your domain name at the end of the entry.

Domain names must be separated with space characters. For example: search example.com mydomain.com

5. Save the file.

Enabling root access

About this task

You must use the root user to install the system layer. On RHEL installed on AWS, the root user is disabled by default, therefore you must enable it.

Procedure

1. Log in to your AWS instance using the AWS CLI as the ec2-user.

This is the default administration user, which does not require a login password.

2. Run the following command to edit the /etc/ssh/sshd config file:

```
sudo vi /etc/ssh/sshd config
```

3. Add the following line to the file:

PermitRootLogin yes

- 4. Save the file.
- 5. Run the following command to apply the changes:

sudo service sshd restart

6. Set a password for the root user using the following command:

```
sudo password root
```

Prerequisites for installing the system layer on AWS

In addition to the prerequisites for the software-only system layer installation that are common for all deployment types, AWS has the following specific prerequisites:

• Ensure that you configured the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway front-end FQDN in the AWS Route 53 service or the DNS service that you use.

• On all Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes in your deployment, add information about each Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node to the /etc/hosts file in the following format:

<IP Address> <Corresponding FQDN> <hostname>

For example:

195.51.100.5 aawg1.mycompany.com aawg1 195.51.100.6 aawg2.mycompany.com aawg2

- Enable root access to RHEL. For more information, see Enabling root access on page 91.
- Create a non-root user on RHEL. For more information, see <u>Creating administrative users</u> on page 78.
- If you are using a Red Hat subscription for RHEL package management, you must configure a public IP address on each of your AWS instances using the AWS Elastic IP service. For more information about setting up public IP addresses, see <u>Elastic IP addresses</u>.
- RHEL 7.6 released on AWS does not have LVM by default. You must install the LVM package manually by running the following command:

yum install -y lvm2

Creating target groups

About this task

In cluster deployments, target groups forward traffic from the load balancer to a specific node of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster when certain conditions are met.

You must configure two target groups for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node IP addresses with the following parameters:

Group	Protocol	Port	IP to register
Target group for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway nodes	HTTPS	8448	IP addresses of all Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway nodes in the cluster.
#1			These are the IP addresses of the primary eth0 interface of cluster nodes.
Target group for Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway nodes	HTTPS	8445	IP addresses of all Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway nodes in the cluster.
#2			These are the IP addresses of the primary eth0 interface of cluster nodes.

Only perform this procedure if you have an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster.

Procedure

Repeat the following steps for each target group:

1. On the Amazon Web Services Management console, navigate to **Services** > **EC2** > **Target Groups**.

2. Click Create target group.

The Amazon Web Services Management displays the Specify group details page.

- 3. In the Basic configuration area, configure settings as follows:
 - a. In Choose a target type, select IP addresses.
 - b. In Target group name, type a name of your choice for the group.
 - c. In **Protocol**, select the protocol specified for the group in the "Protocol" column of the table.
 - d. In **Port**, type the port number specified for the group in the "Port" column of the table.
 - e. In VPC, select the Virtual Private Cloud that you are using for your deployment.
 - f. In Protocol version, select HTTP1.
- 4. In the Health checks area, configure the settings as follows:
 - a. In Health check protocol, select HTTP.
 - b. In Health check path, type /health.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. On the Register targets page, configure IP addresses for the group as follows:
 - a. In **IP**, type the IP address of a node as specified in the "IP to register" column of the table for the group you are configuring.
 - b. In **Port**, type the port number specified for the group in the "Port" column of the table.
 - c. Click Include as pending below.
 - d. Repeat substeps a to c for all remaining IP addresses that you must include in the group.
- 7. Click Create target group.

Creating and configuring Elastic load balancers

About this task

The Elastic load balancer distributes incoming traffic between Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes. In cluster deployments, you must create one Elastic load balancer for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes.

Before you begin

- Create two target groups as described in <u>Creating target groups</u> on page 92.
- Ensure that you have the load balancer certificates for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway frontend FQDN. For more information about creating certificates, see <u>Creating and applying load</u> <u>balancer certificates</u> on page 65.

Procedure

- 1. On the Amazon Web Services Management console, navigate to **Services** > **EC2** > **Load Balancers**.
- 2. Click Create Load Balancer.

- 3. On the Configure Load Balancer page, configure the settings as follows:
 - a. In **Name**, type a name of your choice.
 - b. In Scheme, select Internal.
 - c. In IP address type, select ipv4.
 - d. In **VPC**, select the Virtual Private Cloud that you are using for your deployment.
 - e. In Listener, add listeners for the load balancer as follows:

Load balancer	Protocol	Port
Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway load balancer	HTTPS	443
	HTTPS	8440
	HTTPS	8443
	HTTPS	8445

- f. In **Availability Zones**, select the subnet that you configured for all nodes in the cluster.
- 4. On the Configure Security Settings page, in **Certificate Type**, select **Choose a certificate from ACM** and then select the certificates that you prepared for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway FQDN.
- 5. On the Configure Security Groups page, in **Assign a security group**, select **Select an existing security group** and then select the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway load balancer security group that you created.

For more information about security groups, see Creating security groups on page 87.

- 6. On the Configure Routing page, configure routing as follows:
 - a. In Target, select Existing target group.
 - b. In **Name**, select the target groups related to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes.

For more information about the target groups, see <u>Creating target groups</u> on page 92.

- 7. On the Register Targets page, click Next: Review.
- 8. Click Create.

Enabling FIPS mode

About this task

FIPS is a cryptographic security standard. Use this procedure if your enterprise requires FIPS compliance.

FIPS mode is enabled at the operating system level before starting the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation. If FIPS is enabled for the operating system, then Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway will be installed in FIPS mode. Otherwise, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway will be installed in non-FIPS mode. FIPS installation is only supported for new installations. You cannot upgrade a non-FIPS

system to a FIPS system. If you want to enable FIPS on a non-FIPS system or disable FIPS on a FIPS system, you must uninstall the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application first, change FIPS mode, and then install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

😵 Note:

- This procedure applies to OVA-based deployments. If you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application, you must enable FIPS mode using the procedure for software-only deployments.
- If FIPS mode is enabled, you must use the Secure LDAP (LDAPS) protocol to configure LDAP.
- In cluster deployments, if FIPS mode is enabled, SSL encryption for internode communication between the database servers on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes is enabled by default.
- OAuth authorization is unavailable in FIPS mode.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA as an administrator.
- 2. Run the following command to enable FIPS mode:

sys secconfig --fips --enable

3. (Optional) To review the FIPS status, run the following command:

sys secconfig --fips --query

Related links

Enabling FIPS for software-only systems on page 80

Disabling FIPS mode

About this task

After Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is installed with FIPS mode enabled, you *cannot* switch back to non-FIPS mode. You must uninstall the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application layer first, disable FIPS mode, and then reinstall Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Procedure

1. Uninstall Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

For more information, see Uninstalling the Avaya Aura Web Gateway on page 97.

2. Run the following command:

```
sys secconfig --fips --disable
```

Enabling additional STIG hardening

About this task

The Security Technical Implementation Guides (STIGs) are the requirements that, when implemented, enhance application security and monitoring capabilities. By default, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway enables essential STIG hardening options during the system layer installation or upgrade. These default settings are appropriate for most deployments. If your organization requires stricter STIG compliance, use this procedure to enable additional Linux STIG security hardening options.

Important:

You cannot enable additional STIG hardening in software-only deployments.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA as an administrator.
- 2. Run the following command to enable additional STIG hardening options:

sys secconfig --stig --enable

- 3. When prompted, press c to apply new password rules.
- 4. (Optional) To review the STIG hardening status, run the following command:

sys secconfig --stig --query

Disabling additional STIG hardening

About this task

Use this procedure to disable additional STIG hardening. The default STIG hardening options, which are enabled during the system layer installation or upgrade process, will still be available. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway also continues to use the password complexity rules that were set up when you enabled additional STIG hardening.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the virtual machine with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA as an administrator.
- 2. Run the following command to disable additional STIG hardening:

sys secconfig --stig --disable

3. (Optional) To review the STIG hardening status, run the following command:

```
sys secconfig --stig --query
```

Uninstalling the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

Procedure

- 1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.
- 2. To remove the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway from the system, run the following command: app uninstall
- 3. When prompted, type the following:
 - a. uninstall and press Enter.
 - b. yes and press Enter.

Chapter 6: Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway setup

Installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

About this task

Use this procedure to install a standalone Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway or the initial node for an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster.

Important:

Do not use this procedure to install additional nodes to a cluster. For more information on installing additional nodes, see <u>Installing additional nodes to create a cluster</u> on page 104.

Before you begin

- Deploy the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA.
- Start the virtual machine.
- If you are planning to use FIPS, enable it as described in <u>Enabling FIPS mode</u> on page 94. You *cannot* enable FIPS mode during or after Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation. You cannot use the OAuth authentication feature when FIPS mode is enabled.

Procedure

1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.

The Linux administrator account is created during the deployment process.

- 2. Do one of the following:
 - If you install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using the OVA, run the following command: app install

When you run the app install command without specifying a build, then the system automatically picks up the current build in opt/Avaya. If you do specify a build by running app install csa-<version>.bin, then the system looks for that build first in your current working directory and then in opt/Avaya.

• If you install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application, run the following command:

app install <PATH>/<INSTALLER>

In this command, <PATH> is the full path to the directory where you extracted the application binary when installing the system layer, and <INSTALLER> is the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application binary. For example:

```
app install /root/csa-swonly-3.9.0.0/csa-3.9.0.0.bin
```

The system displays the installation screen.

Important:

During the installation, do not resize the screen or the SSH console.

- 3. If you are installing the initial node for a new cluster, then do the following:
 - a. Select Cluster Configuration.
 - b. Ensure that **Initial cluster node** is set to y (yes) and **Local Node IP address** is set to the IP address of the node.

These are the default values.

To return to the previous menu, select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.

- c. **(Optional)** In the **Cassandra Encryption** menu, enable SSL encryption to secure Cassandra database communications between nodes in a cluster.
 - Important:
 - If you want to enable Cassandra internode encryption, you must enable it during the initial installation. This setting cannot be changed after the initial installation.
 - If you enabled FIPS mode, ensure that Cassandra internode encryption remains enabled. If you disable Cassandra internode encryption, installation will fail.
- 4. Select **Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration** and do the following:
 - a. For a standalone node, select **Front-end IP or FQDN** and enter the FQDN that clients use to access services.

The default value is the FQDN assigned to the local server.

For a cluster deployment that uses the internal load balancer, you must configure **Front-end IP or FQDN** as the FQDN corresponding to the virtual IP address of the internal load balancer.

For a cluster deployment that uses an external load balancer, you must configure **Front-end IP or FQDN** as the FQDN corresponding to the external load balancer.

- b. Select **System Manager FQDN** and enter the FQDN of the Avaya Aura[®] System Manager that signs the certificates for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway services.
- c. (Optional) Select System Manager web admin username (o) and System Manager web admin password and provide the credentials.

d. Select **System Manager HTTPS Port** and type the port for contacting the REST interface of Avaya Aura[®] System Manager.

The default port is 443.

- e. Select **System Manager Enrollment Password** and type the Avaya Aura[®] System Manager enrollment password.
- f. Select **Keystore password** and type a password to use for the local keystore.

Important:

You must remember the Keystore password for future references. You need this password for any certificate management tasks.

g. Configure additional settings that are required for your system as described in <u>Front-end host</u>, <u>System Manager</u>, <u>and certificate configuration</u> on page 109.

To return to the previous menu, select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.

5. Select **Deployment settings** and then press the Spacebar to select the deployment option that corresponds to the solution that you are installing.

If you have conferencing in your solution, then select **Team Engagement + Conferencing**. Otherwise, you must select **Team Engagement**. Do not select **Conferencing only**.

6. To review the settings, select **Continue** and then select **Accept and continue**.

The system runs pre-install configuration checks.

7. To install the software, select **Continue** and then accept the license agreement.

Wait for several minutes while the installation proceeds.

8. Select **Continue** to start the configuration utility.

Important:

Do not change the settings in **Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration** without reentering the System Manager enrollment and keystore passwords before applying the changes.

9. Select **LDAP Configuration**, and then configure each of the LDAP settings using the LDAP configuration information for your network.

For more information on LDAP configuration, see <u>LDAP configuration</u> on page 112.

10. **(Optional)** If this is an initial node for a cluster, and you want to use internal load balancing, do the following:

Important:

- The virtual IP address is used for redundancy management of the internal load balancer in a cluster.
- To avoid performance degradation of the cluster, an external load balancer is recommended for clusters with four or more nodes.

- For a cluster deployment that uses an external load balancer, you must configure **Front-end IP or FQDN** as the FQDN corresponding to the external load balancer.
- If you use an external load balancer, do not configure the virtual IP settings that enable the internal load balancer.
- a. Select Clustering Configuration > Virtual IP Configuration.
- b. Select **Enable virtual IP** and set the value to y (yes).

The system displays additional Virtual IP configuration.

c. Configure all of the Virtual IP settings as described in <u>Virtual IP configuration</u> <u>options</u> on page 128.

You must configure the initial node as the Virtual IP master node. In a cluster, you must configure one additional node as the Virtual IP backup node.

Important:

You must save the Virtual IP authentication password. You need this password when configuring the second node in the cluster as the virtual IP backup node.

- d. To save the changes on the system, select **Apply** and then select **Continue**.
- e. Select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.
- 11. To apply the changes, from the main menu, select **Continue** and then select **Yes** to start the services.

The system starts the services.

12. To exit the configuration tool, select **Continue**.

Next steps

- Set up the required certificates as described in <u>Certificate configuration using the</u> <u>configuration utility</u> on page 188.
- Install additional nodes to create a cluster.
- Change the following default passwords:
 - The default Cassandra database password as described in <u>Changing the Cassandra user</u> <u>name and password</u> on page 130. If you install a cluster, install all required additional nodes before changing the password.
 - The default password for automatic backups. For more information, see <u>Changing the</u> <u>default password for automatic backups</u> on page 131.

Unexpected characters in the /etc/hosts file on a localhost line

Condition

When you deploy Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on AWS, Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway displays the following error:

Hostname Check Found unexpected characters in /etc/hosts on a localhost line (127.0.0.1 or localhost) Hostname Check [FAILED]

Cause

The /etc/hosts file is incorrectly configured when the virtual machine is created.

The following is an example of incorrectly configured localhost entries in the /etc/hosts file:

```
127.0.0.1 localhost localhost.localdomain localhost4 localhost4.localdomain4 ::1 localhost localhost.localdomain localhost6 localhost6.localdomain6
```

Solution

1. Open the /etc/hosts file in the vi text editor with sudo privileges:

```
sudo vi /etc/hosts
```

2. Reconfigure the lines that contain localhost entries as shown in the following example:

```
127.0.0.1 localhost.localdomain localhost
::1 localhost6.localdomain6 localhost6
```

Ensure that the lines does not contain any redundant space and tab characters.

- 3. Save the /etc/hosts file.
- 4. Repeat the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation procedure.

Performing a silent installation

About this task

Use this procedure to perform a silent installation of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server.

The silent installation consists of configuring most of the settings in a properties file, instead of using the installation and the configuration menu for every item.

The properties file is called installation.properties. It contains the same settings that you configure during the interactive installation. The settings are grouped, and the file contains comments that describe the settings.

😵 Note:

The properties file does not contain settings for the following elements:

- The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster
- The SSH RSA configuration

You must configure these settings using the configuration utility after the silent installation is complete.

If errors occur after the installation, you can use the configuration utility to re-configure some of the settings.

Procedure

1. From the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway binary file, extract the template file.

sudo ./csa-<version>.bin --tar xf -- ./installation.properties

2. Configure the settings in the installation.properties file.

The settings are the same as the interactive installation. For more information about the settings, see <u>Avaya Aura Web Gateway initial configuration settings</u> on page 108.

You can leave some of the settings blank and then configure them manually after the installation is complete.

3. Run the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway binary with a parameter that represents the full path to the properties file.

For example:

sudo ./csa-<version>.bin /home/avaya/installation.properties

- 4. **(Optional)** To start the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway service, run the following command:
- 5. Manually configure the remaining items.

When possible, use the web administration portal to modify configuration settings instead of the configuration utility. For more information about using the web administration portal, see *Administering the Avaya Aura*[®] *Web Gateway*.

Seed node replacement configuration

If a seed node is unavailable, you might experience service loss on an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster. You will also be unavailable to install a new node on the cluster. To prevent this issue from occurring, you can specify a list of backup nodes for the seed node while performing silent installation. If the initial seed node becomes unavailable, Cassandra replaces it with a node from the backup nodes list, so the cluster continues to operate. When you add a new node, Cassandra checks whether the initial seed node is available. If not, Cassandra tries to connect the new node to one of backup nodes.

Important:

You cannot configure backup nodes using the standard, interactive installation process.

Specify backup nodes in the SEED_NODE_BACKUP property of the installation.properties file. The value of this parameter is a list of IP addresses separated by commas. For example: SEED_NODE_BACKUP=192.168.150.3,192.168.150.4. If the seed node is unavailable, Cassandra tries to replace it with a node listed in SEED_NODE_BACKUP in the order specified in the property. On Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, you can review the seed nodes configuration in the /opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/<version>/cassandra/<version>/cassandra.yaml file.

Related links

Installing additional nodes to create a cluster on page 104

Installing additional nodes to create a cluster

About this task

You can achieve redundancy and increase capacity by creating a cluster of Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes.

The installation procedure for each additional node is similar to the procedure for a single-server or initial node installation, with the addition of some cluster specific configuration. After installing an initial node, use this procedure to create a cluster of Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes. You can also use this procedure to add nodes to an existing cluster at a later time.

The virtual IP address and the IP addresses for all nodes of the cluster must be in the same network.

Important:

- When creating or expanding a cluster, for each additional Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node you must use the same resource profile that you used for the initial node. Mixed resource profile clusters are not supported. The resource profiles are set when installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway OVA and cannot be modified after the OVA is deployed.
- To avoid performance degradation of the cluster, an external load balancer is recommended for clusters with four or more nodes.

Before you begin

- Install an initial Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node. For more information, see <u>Installing the</u> <u>Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 98.
- Enable the virtual IP configuration on the initial node if you are using the internal load balancer for the cluster.
- Configure the front-end FQDN on the initial node to match the FQDN assigned to the load balancer. If you need to update the front-end FQDN on the initial node, use the configuration utility.
- Deploy an OVA on the same network as the initial node for each additional node required. For more information, see <u>VMware deployments</u> on page 51.
- If you are planning to use FIPS, enable it as described in <u>Enabling FIPS mode</u> on page 94. You *cannot* enable FIPS mode during or after Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation. You cannot use the OAuth authentication feature when FIPS mode is enabled.

Procedure

1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.

The Linux administrator account is created during the deployment process.

- 2. Do one of the following:
 - If you install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using the OVA, run the following command:

app install

When you run the <code>app install</code> command without specifying a build, then the system automatically picks up the current build in <code>opt/Avaya</code>. If you do specify a build by

running app install csa-<version>.bin, then the system looks for that build first in your current working directory and then in opt/Avaya.

• If you install Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway as a software-only application, run the following command:

```
app install <PATH>/<INSTALLER>
```

In this command, <PATH> is the full path to the directory where you extracted the application binary when installing the system layer, and <INSTALLER> is the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application binary. For example:

```
app install /root/csa-swonly-3.9.0.0/csa-3.9.0.0.bin
```

The system displays the installation screen.

Important:

During the installation, do not resize the screen or the SSH console.

- 3. Select Cluster Configuration and do the following:
 - a. Set the Initial cluster node option to n (no).
 - b. Ensure that Local Node IP address is set to the IP address of the current node.
 - c. Set **Cluster seed node** to the IP address of the initial node.
 - d. Set **User ID (UID) of product user on seed node** to the user ID of the Linux administrator that was used to install the initial Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node.

The default value is 4000.

To determine the required UID, open the Linux shell on the initial node using your administrator credentials and then run the following command:

id -u <adminuser>

- e. To save the changes on the system, select **Apply** and then select **Continue**.
- f. Select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.
- 4. In the **Cassandra Encryption** menu, enable SSL encryption to secure Cassandra database communications between nodes in a cluster.

Important:

- If you want to enable Cassandra internode encryption, you must do so during the initial installation. This setting cannot be changed after the initial installation.
- If you enabled FIPS mode, ensure that Cassandra internode encryption remains enabled. If you disable Cassandra internode encryption, installation will fail.
- 5. Select Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration and do the following:
 - a. Select **System Manager FQDN** and enter the FQDN of the Avaya Aura[®] System Manager that signs the certificates for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway services.

- b. (Optional) Select System Manager web admin username (o) and System Manager web admin password and provide the credentials.
- c. Select **System Manager HTTPS Port** and type the port for contacting Avaya Aura[®] System Manager.

The default port is 443.

- d. Select **System Manager Enrollment Password** and type the Avaya Aura[®] System Manager enrollment password.
- e. Select **Keystore password** and type a password for using the local keystore.

The keystore password on additional nodes should match the keystore password for the initial node.

Important:

You must remember the keystore password for future reference. You need this password for other certificate management tasks.

f. Configure additional settings that are required for your system as described in <u>Front-</u> end host, System Manager, and certificate configuration on page 109.

To return to the previous menu, select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.

6. Select **Deployment settings** and then press the Spacebar to select the deployment option that corresponds to the solution that you are installing.

You must configure the same deployment type that you configured on the initial node.

If you have conferencing in your solution, then select **Team Engagement + Conferencing**. Otherwise, you must select **Team Engagement**. Do not select **Conferencing only**.

7. To review the settings, select **Continue** and then select **Accept and continue**.

The system runs pre-install configuration checks.

8. To install the software, select **Continue** and then accept the license agreement.

Wait for several minutes while the installation proceeds.

9. Select **Continue** to start the configuration utility.

Important:

Do not change the settings in **Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration** without reentering the System Manager enrollment and keystore passwords before applying the changes.

Marning:

Do not configure the LDAP settings on nodes that you add to a cluster. The LDAP configuration is automatically configured for additional nodes when they connect to the initial node.

10. If this is the second node of a cluster and the virtual IP for internal load balancing is enabled on the initial node, then do the following:

Important:

The virtual IP must be enabled only for the initial node and the second node. Do not enable the virtual IP on any other nodes.

- a. Select Clustering Configuration > Virtual IP Configuration.
- b. Select **Enable virtual IP** and set the value to y (yes).

The system displays additional Virtual IP configuration.

c. Configure all of the Virtual IP settings as described in <u>Virtual IP configuration</u> <u>options</u> on page 128.

Important:

You must use the same Virtual IP authentication password that you set on the initial node of the cluster.

- d. To save the changes on the system, select Apply and then select Continue.
- e. Select Return to Main Menu and press Enter.
- 11. To apply the changes, from the main menu, select **Continue** and then select **Yes** to start the services.

The system starts the services.

12. To exit the configuration tool, select **Continue**.

Next steps

- Set up the required certificates as described in <u>Certificate configuration using the</u> <u>configuration utility</u> on page 188.
- Repeat this procedure to add the required number of nodes to the cluster.
- After all of the required cluster nodes are installed, change the default Cassandra database password as described in <u>Changing the Cassandra user name and password</u> on page 130.
- After all of the required cluster nodes are installed or if new nodes are added to an existing cluster, you must configure the RSA public and private keys on the initial node.

Related links

Seed node replacement configuration on page 103

Configuring RSA public and private keys for SSH connections in a cluster

About this task

After nodes are added to a cluster, you must configure the RSA public and private keys to enable internode SSH communications.

Use this procedure to configure the RSA public and private keys on the initial node for the entire cluster.

Before you begin

Install all of the required nodes for the cluster.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Linux shell on the initial Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway node as an administrator.
- 2. Run the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration utility using the app configure command.
- 3. Navigate to Clustering Configuration > Cluster Utilities > Configure SSH RSA Public/ Private Keys.

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway displays the RSA Public and Private key configuration tool.

4. When the system displays the Add additional hosts to the list? (y/n) prompt, enter y (yes) if you are generating keys for the first time or if you need to generate keys for a new node in the cluster.

Otherwise, enter n (no).

- 5. If you chose to update the node list in the previous step, when Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway prompts you, enter the IP address of the non-seed node in the cluster you want to generate keys for and then press Enter.
- 6. Repeat the previous step for all remaining non-seed nodes.
- 7. When Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway prompts you to enter a user name for a node, enter the username for the Linux administrator account that you used to perform the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation.
- 8. If Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway prompts you to replace the existing keys, enter y (yes).
- 9. If Avaya Aura® Web Gateway displays the following error, type yes and then press Enter:

The authenticity of the host can't be established.

- 10. When Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway prompts you to enter a password, enter the password for the Linux administrator account that you used to perform the installation.
- 11. When the configuration is complete, press Enter.
- 12. Return to the main menu.
- 13. From the main menu, select **Continue** and then select **Yes** to restart services and apply the changes.

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway initial configuration settings

The following sections describe the initial configuration settings for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. They also list the equivalent installation.properties file parameters for each setting for silent installations. If you do not configure a setting during installation, you can configure it later. You can update many of these settings anytime using the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway
administration portal as described in the "Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway management with the administration portal" chapter in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Related links

<u>Front-end host, System Manager, and certificate configuration</u> on page 109 <u>LDAP configuration</u> on page 112 <u>Cluster configuration</u> on page 127 <u>Virtual IP configuration options</u> on page 128 <u>Advanced configuration</u> on page 129

Front-end host, System Manager, and certificate configuration

If you do not select the **Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration** option during the installation, then the self-signed certificates are automatically generated. Self-signed certificates are also generated when:

- The System Manager FQDN option is not set.
- The **Use System Manager for certificates** option is set to n and certificates were not provided for one of the interfaces: REST, OAMP, SIP, or NODE.

You can modify certificate configuration settings from the administration portal anytime. This is useful if you do not complete the certificate configuration as part of the initial setup process or if you generate certificates at a later time.

For information about managing certificates through the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal, see the managing certificates section in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

\land Caution:

If the system is using System Manager for certificates, then changing the System Manager FQDN after installation will result in the regeneration of certificates. This might impact the client and backend server communication with the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
Front-end FQDN	The front-end FQDN is the address that end-user clients use to access the services provided by Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.	REST_FRONTEND_HOST
	For a cluster deployment, you must configure the front-end FQDN as the FQDN of the virtual IP address. If an external load balancer is used, set this value to the FQDN of the load balancer.	

Table 3: Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration settings

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
	The default value depends on the configuration present in the /etc/ hosts file of the server.	
System Manager FQDN	The FQDN of the Avaya Aura [®] System Manager that signs the certificates.	SYSTEM_MGR_IP
System Manager web admin username (o)	The System Manager web administration portal user name.	SMGR_USER_NAME
System Manager web admin password	The System Manager web administration portal password.	SMGR_USER_PASSWORD
System Manager HTTPS Port	The HTTPS port used for the Alarm Agent for the current Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server.	SYSTEM_MGR_HTTPS_PORT
System Manager Enrollment Password	 The default value for this setting is 443. The Avaya Aura[®] System Manager enrollment password. Note: To get the password, log in to System Manager and navigate to Service > Security > Certificates > Enrollment Password 	SYSTEM_MGR_PW
Override port for remote access	Specifies the port on the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server. This port is used by a reverse proxy, such as Avaya SBCE, that fronts HTTP-based clients which are external to the enterprise. The reverse proxy continues to receive requests from the external clients on port 443, and then forwards them to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway on the reverse proxy port. Clients within the enterprise continue to access Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway directly using port 443. Select y (yes) to configure the port for the reverse proxy server or n (no) to keep the default configuration that remains disabled.	OVERRIDE_FRONTEND_PORT For the Front-end port for reverse proxy setting, the equivalent parameter is REST_FRONTEND_PORT.

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
	 Important: If this setting is enabled, you cannot set the port to 443, but you can set it to 8444, which is the default setting, or to any other port. If you select y (yes), the menu displays a new setting for the reverse proxy port: Front-end port for reverse proxy. If you override the port for remote access, you must configure this port on the Avaya SBCE external interface for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. For more information, see Administering Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise. Note: 	
	You can also set this port on the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway administration portal under External Access > HTTP Reverse Proxy . After selecting the Front-end port for remote access check box, you can modify the port value.	
Use System Manager for certificates	Specifies if the certificates are retrieved from Avaya Aura [®] System Manager or from imported files. Select y (yes) to retrieve certificates from Avaya Aura [®] System Manager or n (no) to retrieve certificates from imported files. If you select n (no), the menu displays new settings for configuring the certificate files. To configure the certificate settings, you must provide the complete file path name to the:	USE_SMGR If the USE_SMGR option is set to n (no), you must configure the following parameters for importing the certificate files: • REST_KEY_FILE • REST_CRT_FILE • SIP_KEY_FILE • SIP_CERT_FILE • OAM_KEY_FILE • OAM_CRT_FILE • NODE_KEY_FILE • NODE_CRT_FILE • CA_CRT_FILE

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
Local frontend	The local FQDN of the node.	LOCAL_FRONTEND_HOST
nost	The configuration utility uses this value to generate certificates for the node.	
	Important:	
	In a clustered configuration, the local front-end host is different from one node to the other and is also different from the front-end FQDN. In a non-clustered environment, the local front-end host is usually different from the front-end FQDN to create a clustered configuration from a non-clustered configuration.	
Keystore password	The keystore password for the MSS and Tomcat certificates.	KEYSTORE_PW
	The minimum length for this password is 6 characters. The characters supported for the keystore password are:	

LDAP configuration

If you do not complete LDAP configuration during the initial Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway setup, then you can complete it later using the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal. Some administration options, such as configuring multiple LDAP directories, are only available on the administration portal. For more information, see *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

\land Warning:

Changing the LDAP configuration parameters, other than Bind DN and Bind Credential, when they are configured, might invalidate the existing user data. For example, changing how user roles are found can remove one or more roles from the existing user, which will block the user from accessing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway system. In addition, do not change the server URL unless you need to switch the configuration to another replicated instance of the current LDAP directory. In all the other cases, you must reinstall the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway system.

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
Load LDAP properties from file	The Load LDAP properties from file menu contains an item called Path to properties file .	pathToLdapPropertiesFile

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	You can create a Java properties file that contains the LDAP properties instead of entering the LDAP configuration settings manually. The Path to properties file option is for configuring the absolute path to this file.	
	The LDAP properties file must contain the <i>equivalent properties file parameters</i> specified in this table.	
	The default value for this setting is <install_dir>/config/ ldap.properties, where <install_dir> is the installation directory.</install_dir></install_dir>	
Import Secure	The Import Secure LDAP trusted	LDAP_TRUSTSTORE_CERTFILE
LDAP trusted certificate	certificate menu contains the following items:	LDAP_TRUSTSTORE_PASSWORD
	• Certificate file : The path and filename for the LDAP trusted certificate. The certificate file must be in the .PEM format.	
	If you want to configure secure LDAP for onboard Open LDAP, use the nginx certificate located at /etc/ openldap/certs/nginx.crt.	
	Important:	
	Only configure these settings if you need a Secure LDAP connection.	
Directory Type	The LDAP directory type of the enterprise.	IdapType
	The supported directory types are the following:	
	 Microsoft Active Directory 2012, 2016, and 2019 	
	 Microsoft Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services (AD-LDS) 	
	IBM Domino Server 7.0	
	😵 Note:	
	The Domino server must be patched to support TLS, so Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway can connect	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	to the Domino server through secure LDAP (LDAPS). For a list of supported patch fixes, see <u>https://www-10.lotus.com/ldd/</u> <u>dominowiki.nsf/dx/</u> <u>IBM_Domino_TLS_1.0</u> .	
	Novell e-Directory 8.8	
	OpenLDAP 2.4	
	Oracle Directory Server Enterprise Edition 11g Release 1 (11.1.1.7.0)	
	For detailed information about supported product releases, see the <u>Avaya</u> <u>Compatibility Matrix</u> .	
URL for LDAP server	The URL for gaining access to the LDAP server. This is the mandatory setting.	ldapUrl
	The URL must have one of the following formats:	
	<pre>ldap://<ldap address="" fqdn="" ip="" or="" server="">:<port> ldaps://<ldap fqdn="" server="">:<port></port></ldap></port></ldap></pre>	
	For example:	
	<pre>ldap://myserver.mycompany.com:3268 ldaps:// myserver.mycompany.com:3269</pre>	
	The protocol can be LDAP or LDAPS, depending on the LDAP server type. If you are using LDAPS, you cannot use IP addresses in the URL.	
	Important:	
	If FIPS is enabled, use the LDAPS protocol to access the LDAP server.	
	For Microsoft Active Directory, use the catalog LDAP ports.	
	The default global catalog LDAP port values are 3268 for LDAP and 3269 for LDAPS.	
	The default domain LDAP ports values are 389 for LDAP and 636 for LDAPS.	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	★ Note: If an FQDN is used to specify the LDAP server, the enterprise might map the FQDN to multiple, replicated LDAP servers using the DNS round-robin mechanism as an attempt for load-balance and for	
	redundancy purpose. Sporadic authentication failures can occur if one of the LDAP servers is offline and the DNS round-robin mechanism resolves the FQDN to the IP of the LDAP server that is offline.	
	If this outcome cannot be tolerated, a more reliable load-balancing mechanism, such as a dedicated load-balancer in front of the LDAP servers, will be needed.	
	For Active Directory, use the Global Catalog service port instead of the default LDAP/LDAPS ports.	
	Important:	
	If you are using the global catalog ports, you must configure attribute replication to the global catalog. For more information, see <u>LDAP</u> <u>attributes replication to the global</u> <u>catalog</u> on page 127.	
Bind DN	The Distinguished Name (DN) of the user that has read and search permissions for the LDAP server users and roles. This is the mandatory setting.	bindDN
	The format of the Bind DN depends on the configuration of the LDAP server.	
	😒 Note:	
	Even though the parameter name is Bind DN, the format of its value is not limited to the DN format. The format can be any format that the LDAP server can support for LDAP bind.	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	For example: for Active Directory, you can use domain\user, user@domain, as well as the actual DN of the user object.	
Bind Credential	Specifies the password of the administrative user. The password length can be from 1 to 20 characters.	Important: If you configure the LDAP settings using the properties file, you must enter the Bind Credential manually by running the configureCSA.sh script.
UID Attribute ID	The User ID attribute name, as determined by the LDAP server configuration. This is the mandatory setting. This parameter is used for searching users in the LDAP server.	uidAttrID
Base Context DN	The DN of the context used for LDAP authentication. For example: ou=csasusers,dc=example,dc=com	baseCtxDN
Administrator Role	 The list of LDAP roles that match the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway Administrator role. For example: If the role is configured as CSAAdmin, CSAxyz, any user whose list of roles contains CSAAdmin or CSAxyz is mapped to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway Administrator role. Note: The values of the roles are case-sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the roles name found for a user in order for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway 	adminRole

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	Important:	
	To avoid situations when potential loss of credentials could impact the administration tasks, Avaya recommends creating more than one user account with administrator privileges.	
Auditor Role	The list of LDAP roles that match the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Auditor role.	auditorRole
	For example:	
	If the Auditor role is configured as CSAAuditor, CSAxyz, any user whose list of roles contains the CSAAuditor or CSAxyz role is mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway AUDITOR role.	
	😣 Note:	
	The values of the roles are case- sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the roles name found for a user in order for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application roles to succeed.	
User Role	The list of LDAP roles that match the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway User role.	usersRole
	For example:	
	If the User role is configured as CSAUser, CSAxyz, any user whose list of roles contains the CSAUser or CSAxyz role is mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway USER role.	
	🛠 Note:	
	The values of the roles are case- sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the roles name found for a user for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application roles to succeed.	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
Services Administrator Role	The list of LDAP roles that match the Services Administrator role.	serviceAdminRole
	For example:	
	If the User role is configured as CSAUser, CSAxyz, any user whose list of roles contains the CSAUser or CSAxyz role is mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Services Administrator role.	
	🔀 Note:	
	The values of the roles are case- sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the roles name found for a user for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application roles to succeed.	
Services Maintonanco and	The list of LDAP roles that match the Maintonance and Support role	serviceMaintenanceRole
Support Role	For example.	
	If the User role is configured as CSAUSER, CSAXYZ, any user whose list of roles contains the CSAUSER or CSAXYZ role is mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Maintenance and Support role.	
	😵 Note:	
	The values of the roles are case- sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the roles name found for a user for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application roles to succeed.	
Security Administrator Role	The list of LDAP roles that match the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Security Administrator role. For example:	securityAdminRole

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	If the role is configured as CSASecurityAdmin,CSAxyz, any user whose list of roles contains CSASecurityAdmin or CSAxyz is mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway Security Administrator role.	
	🛪 Note:	
	The values of the roles are case- sensitive when they are mapped to the application roles. So they must match exactly to the role name found for a user in order for the mapping of the LDAP roles to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway application roles to succeed.	
Advanced LDAP parameters	The menu that contains advanced LDAP parameters to configure depending on the structure of the LDAP server.	
Test User	If you select testUser and select Apply , this option is used to validate the following LDAP settings:	testUser
	• Verifies that the user is searchable with a given base DN and search filter.	
	 Lists the group to which the user belongs — user, administrator, or auditor. 	
	 Validates the values for Role Attribute ID and Role Name Attribute. 	
	 Verifies the Last Updated Time attribute, role filter syntax, and active users search filter syntax. 	
	The configuration is not saved if any of these validations fail.	
	The testUser parameter is optional. If you do not specify a value, the system skips validation and directly saves the configuration in the database.	

LDAP advanced parameters

The following table describes the settings in the Advanced LDAP parameters menu:

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
Role Filter	The string to use for role filtering. This is the mandatory setting.	roleFilter
	The format of the string depends on the LDAP server configuration.	
	<pre>For example: (&(objectClass=group) (member={1}))</pre>	
Role Attribute ID	The Role Attribute ID parameter has a different meaning, depending on the value of Role Attribute Is DN :	roleAttrID
	• If Role Attribute Is DN is set to true, this is the attribute that contains the DN used to find the object that contains the role name.	
	• If Role Attribute Is DN is set to false, this is the name of the attribute that contains the role name.	
	For example: memberOf	
	This is the mandatory setting.	
Roles Context DN	The Roles Context DN to use for searching roles.	rolesCtxDN
	The roles search in LDAP is performed by using the Roles Context DN in combination with the Role Filter.	
	<pre>For example: ou=csasusers,dc=example,d c=com</pre>	
Role Name Attribute	This parameter has a different meaning, depending on the value of Role Attribute Is DN :	roleNameAttrID
	• If Role Attribute Is DN is set to true, the value of the attribute set in Role Attribute ID is used to find the object that contains the role and this parameter stores the name of the attribute that contains the role name.	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	• If Role Attribute Is DN is set to false, this parameter is ignored.	
	For example: cn	
Role Attribute is DN (true/false)	The setting to determine if the role attribute is stored in the DN or in another object.	roleAttrIsDN
	If you set this parameter to true, the role is stored in the attribute defined by the Role Name Attribute parameter.	
	If you set this parameter to false, the role attribute of the user contains the name of the role.	
Role Recursion	The setting to enable or disable role recursion.	roleRecursion
	For example: the user jsmith can be in the Sales group, which can be in the users group. In this case, Role Recursion must be set to true to permit role recursion.	
Allow Empty Passwords (true/ false)	The setting to determine if empty passwords are allowed in the LDAP directory.	allowEmptyPasswords
Search Scope (0 - 2)	The setting to determine the scope of the role search.	searchScope
	The role search starts from the <i>Role Context DN</i> and uses the <i>Role Filter</i> . The search scope determines the depth of the search as follows:	
	• Level 0, also named OBJECT_SCOPE, indicates that the search is performed only on the named role context.	
	• Level 1, also named ONELEVEL_SCOPE, indicates that the search is performed directly under the named role context.	
	 Level 2, also named SUBTREE_SCOPE, indicates 	

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	that the search is performed at the named role context and in the sub-tree rooted at the named role context.	
Language used in Directory	The language used in the LDAP directory.	language
	The following languages are supported:	
	• Russian	
	• German	
	• Spanish	
	• English	
	• Korean	
	• French	
	Portuguese	
	 Simplified Chinese 	
	• Japanese	
	• Italian	
Active users search filter	The search filter string used to identify active users.	activeUsersFilter
	If the LDAP server supports a method of determining whether a user is active, this setting must contain the attribute that determines if a user is active.	
	If this setting is not configured, the User Management component handles all the users as active users.	
	<pre>For example: (&(objectClass=user) (objectCategory=Person)(! (userAccountControl:1.2.8 40.113556.1.4.803:=2))).</pre>	
Last updated time attribute	The attribute indicating the last time an LDAP object was modified, in the ASN.1 Generalized Time Notation.	lastUpdatedTimeAttr

Item name	Description	Equivalent properties file parameter
	The Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway User Management component uses this attribute to identify updated users when synchronizing the user data with the LDAP server.	
	If this parameter is not configured, the User Management component compares the data of every user to the data that exists in the LDAP server.	
	Note: Configuring this parameter improves the efficiency of the user synchronization process and reduces the traffic between the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server and the LDAP server during user synchronization.	
Load parameter defaults	The script to load the default values for the parameters.	—

Multiple authentication and authorization domains

Before Release 3.4, you could configure multiple LDAPs and have multiple base contexts on each LDAP, but you could only use one of them for authorization and authentication. With the single authentication and authorization domain restriction in place, users had to be provisioned multiple times so they existed in the authentication and authorization domain and in the other LDAPs used for search.

As of Release 3.4, the multiple authentication and authorization feature removes the requirement for a single domain for authentication and authorization and facilitates the following deployments:

- A single LDAP infrastructure belonging to a single organization with multiple configured domains.
- Two distinct LDAP infrastructures belonging to two separate organizations.

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway supports up to ten LDAP authentication and authorization domains.

When multiple directories are enabled for authentication, you must provide your FQDN to log in. For example: username@avaya.com. A short user name is not supported. If you do not have proper data in user name attributes, such as mail and userPrincipalName, you can assign a custom attribute that is used for the UID mapping of user names. All values in the custom attribute must be a fully qualified user name of the form username@domain, where domain must match one of the base context DNs defined for the LDAP. During the initial Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway installation procedure, you can configure only one LDAP server. If you want to add more LDAP servers, use the web administration portal. For more information, see "Adding a new enterprise LDAP server" in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Configuring the role search parameters

About this task

This procedure describes how to configure the LDAP role search parameters when Microsoft Active Directory (AD) is used.

Role search for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway users are really about finding the associated "role" strings for a user in LDAP. For AD, this is about the user group names that a user belongs to.

In Microsoft Active Directory, the DNs of the groups that a user belongs to are stored in the "memberOf" attribute of a user. The "memberOf" attribute also stores the Exchange mailing lists that a user belongs to. Conversely, the group objects that the user belongs to contain a "member" attribute that stores the DNs of all of the users and sub-groups that are members of this group.

Procedure

- 1. Run the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration utility using the app configure command.
- 2. Select LDAP Configuration > Advanced LDAP parameters.
- 3. Configure the parameter settings as described in Parameter settings on page 124.
- 4. Configure the attributes as described in <u>Role configuration</u> on page 126.

LDAP parameter descriptions

Parameter settings

The following table describes the parameter settings according to the search mechanism that you choose:

Parameter	Search mechanism #	۲ :	Search mechanism #	#2:
Find the user, extract the group DNs from the "memberOf" attribute, and get the role strings from each of the group objects		Find the groups that the user belongs to and extract the role string from one of the attributes		
	Example	Description	Example	Description
Role Filter	(&(objectClass=user) (objectCategory=Per son)(<uid attribute<br="">ID>={0}))</uid>	<uid attribute="" id=""> is the value of the "UID Attribute ID" parameter. "{0}" is the placeholder that will be replaced by the authenticating user ID.</uid>	(&(objectClass=grou p)(member={1}))	"{1}" is the placeholder to be replaced by the DN of the user object. The DN is identified during the authentication process. This filter looks for a group object whose "member" attribute contains a value of the authenticating user DN.
Role Context DN	ou=Users,dc=global, dc=example,dc=com	The purpose of the search is to find the user and then extract the role objects from the "memberOf" user attribute.	ou=Groups,dc=globa I,dc=example,dc=co m	The purpose of the search is to find the roles whose "member" attribute contains the user.
Role Attribute ID	"memberOf"	This attribute contains the list of DNs of the groups to which the user belongs to.	CN	This contains the group's name (e.g. "AAWGAdmin", etc.)
Role Attribute is DN	true	The "memberOf" values are the DNs of the group/mailing list objects.	false	The "Role Attribute ID" already contains the "role" string name.
Role Name Attribute	CN	The attribute defined by Role Name Attribute contains the group name. For example: AAWGAdmin		Leave this empty because "Role Attribute is DN" is false.

Parameter	Search mechanism #	۲ :	Search mechanism #	#2 :
	Find the user, extract the "memberOf" attri role strings from eac objects	t the group DNs from ibute, and get the h of the group	Find the groups that and extract the role s the attributes	the user belongs to string from one of
	Example	Description	Example	Description
Role Recursion	0	This configuration does not allow recursive search. Note: Using this configuration, the users under the "AAWGDelegates group will not be able to use Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway so this is not the recommended configuration for this example.	1 or higher	You must set this value to 0 if there are no subgroups or a value from 1 to 10 to support searches of users that are in subgroups. In this example, the recursive search is needed to find the user in the "AAWGDelegates" group, so this value must be set to at least 1.

Role configuration

To search the role base context and under it, set **Search Scope** to 2 or SUBTREE_SCOPE. The configuration of the following roles is the same, regardless of the configured search mechanism:

Role	Description	Example	
Administrator Role	This role specifies the list of the "role" string extracted from LDAP that would be mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server ADMIN application role.	AAWGAdmin	
User Role	This role specifies the list of the "role" string extracted from LDAP that would be mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server USERS application role.	AAWGUsers	
Auditor Role	This role specifies the list of the "role" string extracted from LDAP that would be mapped to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway server AUDITOR application role.	AAWGAuditor	
Service Administrator Role	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway does not currently use this role. Leave this setting blank.		
Services Maintenance and Support Role	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway does not currently use this role. Leave this setting blank.		
Security Administrator Role	This role is for updating web certificates from the web administration portal.	AAWGSecurityAdmin	

LDAP attributes replication to the global catalog

If you are using global catalog ports 3268 or 3269 to connect to LDAP, then LDAP queries can only return attributes marked for replication to the global catalog. For example, a user's department cannot be returned because this attribute is not replicated to the global catalog. You must manually add all required attributes in the global catalog attributes list.

Cluster configuration

Using the Cluster configuration, you can configure the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway nodes in a clustered environment.

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
Initial cluster node	The setting to specify if the server where you are performing the installation is the initial node in a cluster. Select v (yes) to set the current node as	INITIAL_NODE If you configure this setting to n (no), you must also configure the following parameters:
	the initial node in the cluster or n (no) to set the current node as an additional node.	SEED_NODEREMOTE_UID
	The default value for this setting is $_{\rm Y}$ (yes).	• CURRENT_CASSANDRA_USER • CURRENT CASSANDRA PASSWORD
	In a standalone installation, set this value to $_{\rm Y}$ (yes).	
	If you configure this setting to n (no), the following settings become visible and must be configured:	
	 The IP address of the initial cluster node. 	
	 The ID of the Linux user performing the installation on the initial node. 	
	• The Cassandra database user name for the initial node.	
	 The Cassandra database password for the initial node. 	
Local node IP address	The IP address of the local node.	CLUSTER_IP_ADDR

Virtual IF	^o configuration	options
------------	----------------------------	---------

Option	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
Enable virtual IP	The setting to enable the usage of a virtual IP address.	KA_ENABLED
	If you select n (no), the configuration script does not configure the virtual IP address.	
	If you select $_{\rm Y}$ (yes), new configuration settings for the virtual IP address are displayed in the configuration menu. These settings are listed below in this table. If you are performing a silent installation you must also configure these parameters in the installation.properties file.	
Virtual IP address	The virtual IP address shared by all the cluster nodes.	KA_VIRTUAL_IP
Virtual IP interface	The network interface used for the virtual IP address. Unless you are using a configuration that has multiple Ethernet interfaces, you must set this value to eth0 (Ethernet-zero).	KA_INTERFACE
Virtual IP master node	Determines if the current node is the virtual IP master node. As the initial node of the cluster is usually designated the virtual IP master, set this value to y (yes), on the initial node. In addition, as the second node in a cluster is usually designated the virtual IP backup, set this value to n (no) on the second node.	KA_MASTER_YN
Virtual IP router ID	An integer with a value from 1 to 255. The value must be the same for both virtual IP master and backup. The default value is 71.	KA_ROUTER_ID
	This value must be unique across Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) installations.	
Virtual IP authentication password	The password that the backup node uses for authentication. This password must be the same as the virtual IP authentication password configured for the initial node.	KA_AUTHENTICATION_PASSWORD

Related links

Avaya Aura Web Gateway initial configuration settings on page 108

Advanced configuration

Table 4: Advanced configuration settings

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
Certificate Warning Period	The number of days before the expiry date of a certificate causes the system to raise an alarm.	CERT_WARNING_PERIOD
OS Security Utility	 The menu for configuring the firewall automatically on the current node. Select Run the firewall configuration script and press Enter to run the firewall configuration script. Avaya recommends that you run this script to configure the firewall automatically and not perform a manual configuration. Warning: The firewall configuration script replaces the current configuration of the firewall on the server where you are performing the installation, so you must open any other ports required for your server manually after you run this script. 	RUN_FIREWALL_CONFIG If you set this parameter to y (yes), the firewall configuration script is run during the silent installation.
Long Poll Timeout	The menu that contains the Recommended Long Poll Timeout configuration option. Use this option for setting the value to use in the Avaya- Request-Timeout HTTP header for long- poll requests. Important: The long poll timeout value can be from 30 to 120. Lowering this value results in increased traffic on the server, but network configuration may require that you set a lower value.	AVAYA_REQUEST_TIMEOUT

Item name	Description	Equivalent installation.properties file parameter
	If you do not configure this parameter, the default database initialization setting is used.	
Configure Host IP for SNMP management	The menu that contains the IP address for managing this server setting for configuring the IP address of the Network Interface to use for SNMP.	SNMP_IP_ADDR
Security Banner File	The menu for configuring security banner settings.	SECURITY_BANNER_PATH
	The Security Banner File setting must contain the path to the security banner file.	
	The security banner file is a text file that contains the security warnings displayed when a user or administrator logs in to the administration portal or using an SSH console.	

Changing the Cassandra user name and password

About this task

After installing the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application, you must change the default Cassandra database password to comply with the security requirements.

This procedure describes how to change the Cassandra database user name and password after installing of an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster.

Before you begin

Install the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway application. If you install an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, install all cluster nodes before changing the Cassandra database password.

Procedure

- 1. On the seed node, do the following:
 - a. Log in to the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway CLI as an administrator.
 - b. Run the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration utility using the following command: app configure
 - c. Select Cassandra DB User and Password.
 - d. Select New Cassandra Database User Name and enter the new user name.
 - e. Select New Cassandra Database User Password and enter the new password.
 - f. Select Apply.

- 2. In a cluster deployment, on every non-seed node, do the following:
 - a. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway CLI as an administrator.
 - b. Run the **cassandraSetPassword** command and specify the new password and user name as parameters.

sudo /opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/<verion>/CAS/<verion>/cassandra/
cassandraSetPassword.sh <new user name> <new password>

c. Restart Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

```
svc csa restart
```

Changing the default password for automatic backups

About this task

Avaya recommends that you change the default password that Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway uses for automatic backups.

Procedure

1. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal at https://<AADS FQDN or IP>:8445/admin/.

For more information about the login procedure, see "Logging in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal" in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

- 2. Go to Automatic Backup Configuration.
- 3. Select the Change Password check box.
- 4. In Backup File Password, type a new password.

The password must comply with the password complexity rules. You can view the rules by pointing the cursor to the **Backup File Password** field.

- 5. In Re-Enter Password, type the password again.
- 6. Click Save.

Starting services using a command line

About this task

Use this procedure to start application services after you complete installation.

Procedure

1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.

The Linux administrator account is created during the deployment process.

2. To start the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway services, run the following command:

Configuring OAMP to use Linux account credentials on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal

About this task

This is an optional procedure that you need to perform if you want to log on to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal using Linux account credentials.

Procedure

1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.

The Linux administrator account is created during the deployment process.

2. Run the following command:

```
cdto active
sudo vi tomcat/<tomcatVersion>/conf/catalina.properties
```

3. Locate the com.avaya.cas.access.groups properties and update the list of groups allowed to access the web administration portal as required.

Ensure that entries in the group list are separated by a comma. The following is an example:

```
# OAMP access linux groups
com.avaya.cas.access.groups.admin=admingrp
com.avaya.cas.access.groups.securityadmin=admingrp
```

Users that are part of the "admingrp " group have access to the web administration portal by default.

4. Run the following command to apply the changes:

svc tomcat restart

Chapter 7: Global FQDN configuration

You can use a single FQDN for all services or multiple FQDNs for each service. If you are using multiple FQDNs, you require an external interface on the reverse proxy for each FQDN and separate certificates for each FQDN.

In a single FQDN environment, remote clients and endpoints that participate in conferences interact with multiple components through HTTPS. To eliminate the need for multiple external public IPs, FQDNs, and certificates, the URL rewriting method is used. Using this method, clients and endpoints can access conferences using a single FQDN and a single IP address through port 443.

DNS configuration

- For a single FQDN deployment, configure DNS as follows:
 - For external DNS configuration, have a single FQDN record, for example, webservices.company.com, that points to the reverse proxy or load balancer interface for external traffic.
 - For internal DNS configuration, have a single FQDN record, for example, webservices.company.com, that points to the reverse proxy or load balancer interface for internal traffic.
- For a multiple FQDNs deployment, configure DNS as follows:
 - For external DNS configuration, each FQDN points to the external load balancer interface.
 - For internal DNS configuration, each FQDN points to the individual server components.

Related links

Required FQDNs and certificates on page 29

Configuring the front-end FQDN

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **External Access > HTTP Reverse Proxy**.
- 3. Configure the following settings:

4. In Host, provide the service FQDN.

For example: You can use webservices.company.com in a single FQDN deployment. In a multiple FQDN deployment, use webgateway.company.com.

- 5. In Port, enter 443.
- 6. If you have any external clients, including WebRTC, mobile, or desktop clients outside the enterprise firewall, do the following to enable a remote port:
 - a. Select the Enable port for external access check box.
 - b. In Front-end port for external access, enter a value between 1024 and 65535.

The default port value is 8444.

This port setting must be configured in the reverse proxy so traffic for clients outside the firewall is translated from the front-end port to this remote access port.

- 7. If you are configuring a geographically distributed system, select the **Enable use of an external load balancer** check box.
- 8. Click Save.

Related links

Geographical distribution overview on page 15

Avaya Meetings Server configuration for single FQDN deployments

Configuring Avaya Workplace Client conference control Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Meetings Management web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to Settings > Advanced Parameters.
- 3. In Property Name, enter com.visionnex.vcms.core.uccp.customizedUCCPURL.
- 4. In Property Value, enter https://<Service FQDN>:443/uwd/ws?ticket=.

For example: https://webservices.company.com:443/uwd/ws?ticket=.

5. Click Apply.

Configuring Web Collaboration

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Meetings Management web administration portal.
- Navigate to Devices > Devices by Type > <Web Collaboration server name> > Configuration.
- 3. Configure the following settings:
 - a. In **Service FQDN** and **Local FQDN**, enter the service FQDN that resolves to the IP address of the selected Web Collaboration node.

```
For example: webconference1.company.com
```

- b. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address that is resolved from the service and local FQDNs.
- c. In Public URL Branch, enter <Service FQDN>/<Web Collaboration Services node prefix>.

For example: webservices.company.com/webconference1.

Note:

The public branch URL is used to support multiple Web Collaboration Services nodes with a single public FQDN.

4. Repeat the previous steps for each Web Collaboration Services server that is part of the deployment.

Chapter 8: System Manager, Avaya Aura[®] Device Services, Media Server, and Avaya Meetings Server configurations

Adding the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway to System Manager

About this task

Use this procedure to enable SSO login and add the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway FQDN to the System Manager web console.

😵 Note:

To set up an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, use the front-end FQDN for the cluster. If you are using an external load balancer, the front-end FQDN for the cluster will be the FQDN of the load balancer. If not, it will be the FQDN of the virtual IP assigned to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have administrative privileges to access System Manager.

For information about accessing System Manager, see Administering Avaya Aura[®] System Manager.

Procedure

- 1. On the System Manager web console, click **Services** > **Inventory**.
- 2. In the left navigation pane, click Manage Elements.
- 3. On the Manage Elements page, click New.

The system displays the New Elements page.

- 4. In the General section, from Type, select Avaya Aura Web Gateway .
- 5. On the New Avaya Aura Web Gateway page, in the General section, provide the following information:
 - Name: Type a name for the element.
 - Type: Retain the default setting of Avaya Aura Web Gateway.

- Description: Type a description for the element.
- Node: Type the FQDN address of the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway server.
- 6. To enable SSO login, in the Access Profile section, perform the following:
 - a. Click New.
 - b. In the Application System Supported Protocol section, in the Protocol field, click URI.
 - c. In the Access Profile Details section, in the **Name** field, type a name for the access profile.
 - d. In the Access Profile Type field, click EMURL.
 - e. In the Protocol field, click https.
 - f. In the **Host** field, type the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server FQDN.
 - g. In the Port field, type 8445.
 - h. In the Path field, type /admin.
 - i. In the Order field, retain the default value.
 - j. In the **Description** field, type a description of the access profile.
 - k. Click Save.
- 7. Click Commit.
- On the System Manager console, click Elements > Web Gateway to verify that the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway element has been added.

Configuring SIP Trunks for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on System Manager

About this task

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway sends SIP messages to Session Manager port 5061 using TLS. Use this procedure to ensure that Session Manager is configured to accept these messages.

Important:

For an Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster, repeat this procedure for each node in the cluster using the respective node IP or local FQDN when required.

Before you begin

Set up your Avaya Aura[®] infrastructure, including System Manager.

Procedure

- 1. On the System Manager web console, click **Elements > Routing > SIP Entities**.
- 2. In the SIP Entities area, click **New** to create a new SIP entity for your server.

You can also edit an existing SIP entity using the **Edit** button.

- 3. On the SIP Entity Details page, configure the following required field settings:
 - Name: Type a name for the SIP entity.
 - FQDN or IP Address: Type the FQDN or IP address of the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway.
 - Type: Select SIP Trunk.
 - SIP Timer B/F (in seconds): Retain the default value of 4.
 - SIP Link Monitoring: Select Link Monitoring Disabled.

For information about other fields, see the SIP entity field descriptions in *Administering Avaya Aura*[®] *Session Manager*.

4. In the Entity Links area, click **Add** to add entity links between the newly created SIP entity and the entities representing Session Manager.

While mapping the newly created SIP entity with the Session Manager entities, ensure that the following is set:

- Protocol: TLS.
- Port: 5061.
- Connection Policy: trusted.
- 5. Click **Commit** to save the changes.

Serviceability agents

You must set up serviceability agents to receive Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway alarms in System Manager. To configure serviceability agents, set up an SNMPv3 user profile and an SNMP target profile. Then assign the SNMPv3 user profile to the SNMP target profile.

For more information about managing serviceability agents, see *Administering Avaya Aura*[®] *System Manager*.

Setting up an SNMPv3 user profile

About this task

An SNMPv3 user profile enables you to define privileges so serviceability agents can read and write data in SNMP Management Information Bases (MIBs).

Procedure

- 1. On the System Manager web console, navigate to Services > Inventory > Manage Serviceability Agents > SNMPv3 User Profiles.
- 2. In the User Details section, click Edit.
- 3. In the User Name field, type initial.
- 4. In the Authentication Protocol field, select SHA.

The **MD5** setting is not supported.

5. In the Authentication Password field, type the authentication password.

The default authentication password is avaya123.

- 6. In the **Confirm Authentication Password** field, confirm the password.
- 7. In the Privacy Protocol field, select AES.
- 8. In the **Privacy Password** field, type the privacy password.

The default privacy password is avaya123.

- 9. In the **Confirm Privacy Password** field, confirm the password.
- 10. In the **Privileges** field, select **Read/Write**.
- 11. Click Commit.

Setting up an SNMP target profile

About this task

An SNMP target profile contains settings for sending alarms from Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway to System Manager.

Procedure

- 1. On the System Manager web console, navigate to Services > Inventory > Manage Serviceability Agents > SNMP Target Profiles.
- 2. On the Target Details tab, click Edit.
- 3. In the **Name** field, type the name of the profile.
- 4. In the **Description** field, type a description for the profile.
- 5. In the **IP Address** field, type the System Manager IP address.
- 6. In the Port field, type 10162.
- 7. In the Notification Type field, select Trap.
- 8. In the **Protocol** field, select **V3**.
- 9. Click Commit.

Assigning the SNMPv3 user profile

About this task

You must assign the SNMPv3 user profile to the target profile so System Manager can receive alarms from Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Before you begin

Set up an SNMPv3 user profile and an SNMP target profile.

Procedure

1. On the System Manager web console, navigate to **Services > Inventory > Manage Serviceability Agents > Serviceability Agents**.

- 2. Select the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway host name, and click Manage Profiles.
- 3. Click the SNMP Target Profiles tab.
- 4. In the Assignable Profiles section, click the SNMP target profile you created, and click **Assign**.
- 5. Click the SNMPv3 User Profiles tab.
- 6. In the Assignable Profiles section, select the SNMPv3 profile you created, and click **Assign**.
- 7. Click Commit.

Configuring a registration expiration timer

About this task

The Registration Expiration Timer setting in Session Manager defines a time interval for a SIP server to keep SIP clients registered. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway receives this value from Session Manager and uses it as a refresh interval for SIP registration. The minimal refresh interval supported by Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is 600 seconds or 10 minutes. You must ensure that the Registration Expiration timer in Session Manager is set to at least 600 seconds.

Procedure

- 1. In System Manager, navigate to Elements > Session Manager > Device and Location Configuration > Device Settings Groups.
- 2. Select the appropriate Device Settings Group.

If no additional groups were created, select Default Group.

3. In the Server Timer section, ensure that the **Registration Expiration Timer Minimum** value is set to at least 600 seconds.

Configuring Avaya Aura® Media Server in System Manager

About this task

This procedure outlines the key System Manager configuration required for the Media Server. Use this procedure to administer locations for all Media Server clusters and assign the Endpoint Services Gateway to each Media Server cluster.

😵 Note:

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway does not support Media Server High Availability cluster configuration when using WebRTC.

Procedure

1. Enroll all Media Server clusters in System Manager.

The enrollment must be done using a System Manager account with administrative privileges for adding, changing, deleting, and viewing all Media Server element types. By doing this, the configuration of the Media Server and the nodes within the cluster will be available on the System Manager server. The Media Server must be enrolled with System Manager release 7.0.1.1 or higher. For more information about System Manager enrollment, see *Implementing and Administering Avaya Aura[®] Media Server*.

- 2. Administer locations for all Media Server clusters.
 - a. In System Manager, navigate to **Elements > Media Server > Server Administration**.
 - b. In each required Media Server, set the location.

For more information about Media Server clusters location setting, see *Managing Avaya Aura[®] Media Server from System Manager*.

- 3. Assign "Endpoint Services Gateway" to each cluster of Media Server that will be used by the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.
 - a. In System Manager, navigate to **Elements > Media Server > Application Assignment**.
 - b. Edit the "Endpoint Services Gateway" application.
 - c. Select the required Media Server clusters.

For more information about Media Server cluster location settings, see *Managing Avaya Aura*[®] *Media Server from System Manager*.

Configuring Avaya Aura[®] Media Server settings

About this task

This procedure describes how to configure Avaya Aura[®] Media Server to enable Interactive Connectivity Establishment (ICE) and video processing.

😒 Note:

For performance reasons, Avaya recommends that you use the client-side TURN service. Use server-side TURN only if you cannot use client-side TURN due to your deployment limitations.

For more information about setting up Avaya Aura[®] Media Server, see *Implementing and Administering Avaya Aura[®] Media Server*.

Before you begin

Ensure that WebLM server licensing is configured and enabled in Avaya Aura[®] Media Server.

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the Avaya Aura[®] Media Server Element Manager using the URL https:// <AMS_EM_FQDN>:8443/emlogin/.
- 2. Navigate to System Configuration > Server Profile > General Settings.

- 3. Select Firewall NAT Tunneling Media Processor and Video Media Processor and then click Save.
- 4. Navigate to **System Configuration > Signaling Protocols > REST > General Settings**.
- 5. Select Enable TLS Mutual Authentication and click Save.
- 6. Do the following to enable the TURN service on the client side:
 - a. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal.
 - b. Navigate to External Access > Session Border Controller.
 - c. elect the Enable TURN in WebRTC client check box.
 - d. On the Avaya Aura[®] Media Server Element Manager, navigate to **System Configuration > Media Processing > ICE > STUN/TURN Servers**.
 - e. Ensure that all STUN and TURN servers are disabled.

For more information about enabling client side TURN for the WebRTC clients, see the sections in <u>WebRTC client side TURN configuration</u> on page 164.

- 7. **(Optional)** If you cannot use client-side TURN in your deployment, do the following to enable server-side TURN:
 - a. on the Avaya Aura[®] Media Server Element Manager, navigate to **System Configuration > Media Processing > ICE > STUN/TURN Servers**.
 - b. Select the required STUN and TURN servers.

🕒 Tip:

You can verify the network configuration when you are using Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise (Avaya SBCE) to provide the STUN/TURN service. The STUN/TURN address and port configured on the media server must match the STUN/ TURN Listen IP & Listen port that are configured for the A1 interface of the Avaya SBCE. You must also use the default values for the following settings:

- Protocol: UDP.
- Priority: 0.
- Weight: 10.
- Account: disabled.
- 8. Navigate to **Licensing > General Settings** and ensure that WebLM server licensing is enabled.
- 9. Navigate to Licensing > Monitoring and ensure that Avaya Aura[®] Media Server has acquired licenses.
- 10. For the changes to take effect, navigate to **System Status** > **Element Status** and click **Restart**.

Configuring the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on Avaya Aura[®] Device Services

About this task

Use this procedure to add the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway FQDN to the Avaya Aura[®] Device Services trusted hosts and to verify HTTP client settings.

For more information about Avaya Aura[®] Device Services, see the following documents:

- Deploying Avaya Aura[®] Device Services
- Administering Avaya Aura[®] Device Services

Procedure

- 1. On the Avaya Aura[®] Device Services web administration portal, navigate to **Server Connections > Trusted Hosts** and click **Add**.
- 2. In **Host**, type the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway FQDN.

Important:

Avaya Aura[®] Device Services requires the FQDN or IP address for each Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster node added to the Avaya Aura[®] Device Services trusted hosts list. Avaya Aura[®] Device Services also requires the FQDN or IP address of the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster.

3. On the HTTP Clients tab, ensure that the REST and OAMP options are not set to NONE.

If these options are set to NONE, then the trusted host relationship between the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway and Avaya Aura[®] Device Services will not work. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway will also not be able to communicate with Avaya Aura[®] Device Services.

Uploading clients to the web deployment service

About this task

Use this procedure to upload Windows and MacOS clients to the web deployment service.

For Avaya Workplace Client for Windows, you can upload <code>.exe</code> or <code>.msi</code> installation files. For Avaya Workplace Client for Mac, you can upload <code>.dmg</code> installation files, which are packaged in a <code>.zip</code> archive.

😵 Note:

This procedure applies to Team Engagement and Conferencing deployments. This document does not describe the Conferencing-only deployment model.

For more information about web deployment client installers, see *Administering Avaya Aura*[®] *Device Services*.

Procedure

1. Download Avaya Workplace Client for Mac or Avaya Workplace Client for Windows installation files from the Avaya Support website.

😵 Note:

You must have PLDS access to download these files.

2. If you are uploading Avaya Workplace Client for Mac, pack the Avaya Equinox-<version>.dmg and Avaya Equinox Sparkle Update-<version>.dmg files into a .zip archive with no intermediate directories.

If the . <code>zip</code> archive contains intermediate directories, re-pack the archive so that it only contains the . dmg files in the root directory.

- Log on to the Avaya Aura[®] Device Services web administration portal and navigate to Web Deployment > Deployment.
- 4. In **Title**, type a name of the updates or appcast for the client installer.
- 5. In **Description**, type the description of the client installer updates.
- 6. In Version, type the version details for the Avaya Workplace Client release.
- 7. In OS, select the appropriate Avaya Workplace Client platform:
 - Windows
 - Macintosh
- 8. In File, click Choose File and select one of the following files to upload:
 - For Avaya Workplace Client for Windows, select the .exe or .msi installation file.
 - For Avaya Workplace Client for Mac, select the .zip archive containing the .dmg installation files.

Configuring the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway on Avaya Meetings Server

About this task

If your deployment includes Conferencing, use this procedure to perform the required configuration on the Avaya Meetings Server Management portal. For more information about Conferencing configuration, see *Deploying Avaya Meetings Server*.

Important:

• For the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway and Avaya Meetings Server to establish a secure connection, each must trust the Root CA that signed the other's certificates. If the System Manager signed certificates are applied in Avaya Meetings Server, no further action is required on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.
If the certificates applied in Avaya Meetings Server are signed by a third-party CA other than System Manager, you must follow the steps outlined in <u>Adding third-party root CA</u> <u>certificates to the Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 191. For more information about certificates in Avaya Meetings Server, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Meetings Management*.

• A separate User Portal device must be added for each node on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway cluster using its respective IP address and location.

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the Avaya Meetings Server Management portal.
- 2. Do the following to add the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server as a managed server device on Avaya Meetings Server:
 - a. Navigate to **Devices > User Portals**.
 - b. To add the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server to the list, click **Add**.

The system displays the Add Management Server dialog box.

- c. Enter a unique display name and IP address of the server.
- d. From the **Location** drop-down menu, select location to match the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway location assignment on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal.
- e. Click OK.
- 3. Wait for a few minutes until the newly added User Portal Device indicator changes from gray to green.

Route configuration for an external load balancer

Reverse proxy and load balancer need to accept external and internal connections to the <Service FQDN>:443 address. For example: conferencing.avaya.com:443.

Usually, the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway uses its own internal load balancer that distributes requests between cluster nodes. The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway internal load balancer handles internal and external requests differently:

- Internal requests use port 443.
- External requests use port 8444.

When you use an external load balancer, it redirects internal requests to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway port 443 and external requests to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway port 8444.

The following table shows URL replacement methods that you must configure on the external load balancer to update requests to different servers and services.

Request URL	Destination Address	URL Replace	Component
/uwd/rest	<equinox management<="" td=""><td>/uwd/rest</td><td>Avaya Workplace Client</td></equinox>	/uwd/rest	Avaya Workplace Client
/uwd/ws	Virtual IP FQDN>:443	/uwd/wc	Conference Control (UCCS)
/wcs1/	<wcs1 fqdn="">:443</wcs1>	1	Avaya Aura [®] Media
/wcs2/	<wcs2 fqdn="">:443</wcs2>	1	Server
/wcsX/	<wcsx fqdn="">:443</wcsx>	1	
/ups	• <aawg 1<="" node="" td=""><td>/ups</td><td>Avaya Aura[®] Web</td></aawg>	/ups	Avaya Aura [®] Web
/csa	 FQDN>:<port></port> <aawg 2<="" li="" node=""> FQDN>:<port></port> </aawg>	/csa	Gateway
/uwd/dist		/uwd/dist	
/notification	• <aawg node="" td="" x<=""><td>/notification</td><td></td></aawg>	/notification	
/portal	FQDN>: <port></port>	/portal	
For internal requests, use port 443. For external requests, use port 8444.			
/acs	<aads 1="" fqdn="" node="">:8448</aads>	/acs	Avaya Aura [®] Device Services
 <aads 2<br="" node="">FQDN>:8448</aads> <aads node="" x<br="">FQDN>: 8448</aads> 			

Chapter 9: Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration

Use the following sections to configure Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise (Avaya SBCE) for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. You require Avaya SBCE when you have clients located outside the enterprise firewall. For example, Avaya SBCE is required if you need remote worker functionality. Avaya SBCE is not required if all client users are on the private network within the enterprise firewall.

The Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway can use the following services:

- Reverse proxy service, which handles HTTP or HTTPS traffic form outside the firewall into the internal network. Reverse proxy is placed on the DMZ and routes HTTP(S) traffic to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway for external clients.
- TURN service, which is required when the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway interacts with browserbased audio and video clients outside the enterprise.
- Session border controller service, which is required for audio and video clients to make calls outside the enterprise.

Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise provides this functionality as an Edge device. You do not need a dedicated Avaya SBCE for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. You can use any Avaya SBCE within the enterprise.

For more information about Avaya SBCE configuration, see Administering Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise.

Related links

Required FQDNs and certificates on page 29

Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration checklist

Perform the tasks in this checklist to configure Avaya SBCE.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Ensure that you have a pool of IP addresses available for Avaya SBCE.		
2	Configure reverse proxy.	 In a single FQDN for all services deployment, complete the tasks outlined in <u>Reverse proxy configuration</u> <u>checklist for a single FQDN</u> <u>deployment</u> on page 148. In a multiple FQDN deployment, complete the tasks outlined in <u>Reverse</u> <u>proxy configuration checklist for a</u> <u>multiple FQDN deployment</u> on page 149. 	
3	If you are planning to use external clients outside the enterprise firewall, configure external client access.	Complete procedures in <u>External client</u> access configuration on page 159.	

Reverse proxy configuration

Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist to configure reverse proxy on the Avaya SBCE if you are using a single FQDN for all services.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Verify prerequisites.	See <u>Prerequisites</u> on page 149.	
2	Create a TLS server profile for reverse proxy.	See <u>Checklist for creating a TLS server</u> profile for reverse proxy in a single FQDN <u>deployment</u> on page 150.	
3	Configure a CA.	See <u>Certificate Authority configuration</u> <u>checklist</u> on page 152.	
		You must have the CA that is used to sign certificates for internal components.	
4	Enable web socket support.	See <u>Enabling web socket support</u> on page 153.	

No.	Task	Notes	~
5	Configure external and internal traffic rules.	 For configuring external traffic rules, see <u>Configuring external traffic rules in</u> <u>a single FQDN for all services</u> <u>deployment</u> on page 153. For configuring internal traffic rules, see <u>Configuring internal traffic rules in a</u> <u>single FQDN for all services</u> <u>deployment</u> on page 155. 	

Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration checklist on page 147

Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist to configure reverse proxy on the Avaya SBCE if you are using a multiple FQDNs for services.

No.	Task	Description	~
1	Verify prerequisites.	See Prerequisites on page 149.	
2	Create TLS server profiles for each service in your deployment.	See <u>Checklist for creating TLS server</u> profiles for reverse proxy in a multiple <u>FQDN deployment</u> on page 151.	
3	Configure a CA	See <u>Certificate Authority configuration</u> <u>checklist</u> on page 152. You must have the CA that is used to sign certificates for internal components.	
4	Enable web socket support.	See <u>Enabling web socket support</u> on page 153.	
5	Configure external traffic rules	See <u>Configuring external traffic rules in a</u> <u>multiple FQDN deployment</u> on page 157.	

Related links

Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise configuration checklist on page 147

Prerequisites

Before configuring Avaya SBCE as a reverse proxy:

• Ensure that you have a global FQDN.

- If you are using a single FQDN for all services, ensure that you have the following interfaces on Avaya SBCE:
 - One B1 interface for external traffic.
 - One A1 interface for outgoing HTTP traffic that runs to Avaya Meetings Server Management, Web Collaboration Services, and Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.
 - One A1 interface for internal enterprise HTTP traffic.
- If you are using multiple FQDNs, ensure that you have the following interfaces on Avaya SBCE:
 - One B1 interface per FQDN for each service.
 - One A1 interface for outgoing HTTP traffic that runs to Avaya Meetings Server Management, Web Collaboration Services, and Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway components.

Checklist for creating a TLS server profile for reverse proxy in a single FQDN deployment

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create a certificate signing request.	See Certificate setup on page 176.	
		Use the following options specific for this deployment model:	
		• For Common Name , use the global FQDN. For example: webservices.company.com.	
		• For Subject Alternative Name, use the global FQDN. For example: DNS:webservices.company.com.	
2	Download and save the created .KEY and .CSR files.		
3	Send the .CSR file to a public CA for signing.		
4	Install the signed certificate and the key on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing the certificate, use a descriptive name. For example: webservicesCert.	

No.	Task	Notes	~
5	Create a TLS server profile using the installed certificate.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating a profile, use the certificate installed on the Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: webservicesTlsProfile.	

Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment on page 148

Checklist for creating TLS server profiles for reverse proxy in a multiple FQDN deployment

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create certificate signing requests for each service FQDNs.	See <u>Certificate setup</u> on page 176. Create one certificate for each FQDN used by services deployed in the solution, such as Avaya Meetings Server Management service, Web Collaboration Services, and Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway/Portal. If you are using several Web Collaboration Services servers, you need to create a separate CSR for each Web Collaboration Services FQDN. Use the following options specific for this deployment model:	
		• For Common Name, use the FQDN assigned to that service. For example: conferencing_management.company. com for Avaya Meetings Server Management service.	
		• For Subject Alternative Name, use the global FQDN. For example: DNS:conferencing_management.comp any.com for Avaya Meetings Server Management service.	
2	For each CSR, download and save created .KEY and .CSR files.		

No.	Task	Notes	~
3	Send .CSR files to a public CA for signing.		
4	Install the signed certificates and keys on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing certificates, use descriptive names. For example:	
		conferencingManagementCert for the Avaya Meetings Server Management service certificate.	
		😸 Note:	
		When installing a certificate, make sure that you use the corresponding key. Do not install keys of another certificates.	
5	Create TLS server profiles using the installed certificates.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating profiles, use certificates installed on the Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for each profile. For example:	
		Avaya Meetings Server Management service profile.	

Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment on page 149

Certificate Authority configuration checklist

You must have the CA that is used to sign certificates for internal components.

- In a single FQDN for all services deployment, certificates for internal components are usually signed by the System Manager CA.
- In a multiple FQDN deployment, certificates for internal components are usually signed by a public CA.

To configure a CA, perform the tasks outlined in the following checklist:

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Install the CA on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a CA certificate on Avaya</u> <u>SBCE</u> on page 180.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the CA. For example: certificateAuthority.	
2	Create a TLS client profile.	See <u>Creating a TLS client profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating the profile, use the CA that you installed in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: certificateAuthorityTlsProfile.	

<u>Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 148 <u>Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment</u> on page 149

Enabling web socket support

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to Global Profiles > Reverse Proxy Policy.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In the **Rule Name** field, provide a name for the reverse proxy policy and then click **Next**.
- 5. In the General area, select the Allow Web Socket check box.
- 6. For the other settings, use the default values.
- 7. Click Finish.

Configuring external traffic rules in a single FQDN for all services deployment

Before you begin

Ensure that you have:

• The TLS server profile for reverse proxy. For more information, see the TLS server profile creation tasks outlined in <u>Checklist for creating a TLS server profile for reverse proxy in a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 150.

• The TLS client profile for reverse proxy. For more information, see the CA configuration tasks outlined in <u>Certificate Authority configuration checklist</u> on page 152.

Use the same TLS server and client profiles when configuring both external and internal traffic rules.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- Navigate to Device Specific Settings > DMZ Services > Relay Services > Reverse Proxy.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In **Service Name**, enter a name for the profile.
- 5. Select the Enable check box to enable the reverse proxy profile.
- 6. In **Listen IP**, select the external B1 interface and the Avaya SBCE external leg IP addresses.
- 7. In Listen Port, enter 443.
- 8. In Listen Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 9. In Listen TLS Profile, select the TLS server profile that you created.

An example of the TLS profile name is webservicesTLSProfile.

- 10. Connect IP: Select the internal A1 interface and the Avaya SBCE internal leg IP address.
- 11. In Server Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 12. In Server TLS Profile, select the TLS client profile that you created.

An example of the TLS client profile name is certificateAuthorityTLSProfile.

- 13. Select the **Rewrite URL** check box.
- 14. Click **Add** at the bottom of the page to create a set of rules and configure the rules as described in External traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment on page 154.
- 15. Click Finish.

Related links

External traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment on page 154 Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment on page 148

External traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<="" td=""><td>/uwd/</td><td>/uwd/</td><td>Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Avaya</td></equinox>	/uwd/	/uwd/	Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Avaya
FQDN>:443	rest	rest	Meetings Server Management FQDN resolves to

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<br="">FQDN>:443</equinox>	/uwd/ws	/uwd/ rest	the virtual IP of the Avaya Meetings Server Management Server.
			If you are using a standalone system, this FQDN resolves to the virtual IP address. For example: conferencing_management.company.com.
<wcs1 fqdn="">: 443</wcs1>	/wcs1	/	Avaya Aura [®] Media Server. You must create one
<wcs2 fqdn="">: 443</wcs2>	/wcs2	/	entry per each Web Collaboration Services server. The EODN is the EODN of each Avava Aura [®] Media
<wcsx fqdn="">: 443</wcsx>	/wcsX	/	Server, and it resolves to the corresponding Avaya Aura [®] Media Server IP. For example: webconference1.company.com, webconference2.company.com, and so on.
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/acs	/acs	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway. You must use the FQDN that resolves to the virtual IP address of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway system. For example:
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/ups	/ups	webgateway.company.com.
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/csa	/csa	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/uwd/ dist	/uwd/ dist	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/ notifica tion	/ notifica tion	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web GatewayVirtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/portal	/portal	

Configuring internal traffic rules in a single FQDN for all services deployment

Before you begin

Ensure that you have:

- The TLS server profile for reverse proxy. For more information, see the TLS server profile creation tasks outlined in <u>Checklist for creating a TLS server profile for reverse proxy in a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 150.
- The TLS client profile for reverse proxy. For more information, see the CA configuration tasks outlined in <u>Certificate Authority configuration checklist</u> on page 152.

Use the same TLS server and client profiles when configuring both external and internal traffic rules.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- Navigate to Device Specific Settings > DMZ Services > Relay Services > Reverse Proxy.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In **Service Name**, enter a name for the profile.
- 5. Select the **Enable** check box to enable the reverse proxy profile.
- 6. In Listen IP, select the internal A1 interface and the Avaya SBCE external leg IP address.
- 7. In Listen Port, enter 443.
- 8. In Listen Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 9. In Listen TLS Profile, select the TLS server profile that you created.

An example of the TLS server profile name is webservicesTlsProfile.

- 10. In **Connect IP**, select the internal A1 interface and the Avaya SBCE internal leg IP addresses.
- 11. In Server Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 12. In Server TLS Profile, select the TLS client profile that you created.

An example of the TLS client profile name is certificateAuthorityTLSProfile.

- 13. Select the **Rewrite URL** check box.
- 14. Click **Add** at the bottom of the page to create a set of rules and configure the rules as described in <u>Internal traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 156.
- 15. Click Finish.

Related links

<u>Internal traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 156 <u>Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 148

Internal traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<="" td=""><td>/uwd/</td><td>/uwd/</td><td>Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Equinox</td></equinox>	/uwd/	/uwd/	Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Equinox
FQDN>:443	rest	rest	Management FQDN resolves to the virtual IP of the
			Equinox Management Server.

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<br="">FQDN>:443</equinox>	/uwd/ws	/uwd/ rest	If you are using a standalone system, this FQDN resolves to the virtual IP address. For example: conferencing_management.company.com.
<wcs1 fqdn="">: 443</wcs1>	/wcs1	/	Avaya Aura [®] Media Server. You must create one
<wcs2 fqdn="">: 443</wcs2>	/wcs2	/	entry per each Web Collaboration Services server.
<wcsx fqdn="">: 443</wcsx>	/wcsX	/	Server, and it resolves to the corresponding Avaya Aura [®] Media Server IP. For example: webconference1.company.com, webconference2.company.com, and so on.
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/acs	/acs	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway. You must use the FQDN that resolves to the virtual IP address of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway system. For example:
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/ups	/ups	webgateway.company.com.
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/csa	/csa	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/uwd/ dist	/uwd/ dist	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/ notifica tion	/ notifica tion	
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web GatewayVirtual IP FQDN>: 443</avaya>	/portal	/portal	

Configuring external traffic rules in a multiple FQDN deployment

About this task

Perform this procedure for each service in your deployment. For example, if you have multiple Web Collaboration Services servers in your deployment, you must perform this procedure for each server.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have:

• TLS server profiles for each service in your deployment. For more information, see the TLS server profile creation tasks outlined in <u>Checklist for creating TLS server profiles for reverse</u> proxy in a multiple FQDN deployment on page 151.

 The TLS client profile for reverse proxy. For more information, see the CA configuration tasks outlined in <u>Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment</u> on page 149.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to Device Specific Settings > DMZ Services > Relay Services > Reverse Proxy.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In **Service Name**, enter a name for the profile.
- 5. Select the **Enable** check box to enable the reverse proxy profile.
- 6. In Listen IP, select the external B1 interface and the Avaya SBCE external leg IP address.
- 7. In Listen Port, enter 443.
- 8. In Listen Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 9. In Listen TLS Profile, select the TLS server profile that you created.

An example of the TLS server profile name for Web Collaboration Services is webservicesTLSProfile.

- 10. In **Connect IP**, select the internal interface A1 and the Avaya SBCE internal leg IP address.
- 11. In Server Protocol, select HTTPS.
- 12. In Server TLS Profile, select the TLS client profile that you created.

An example of the TLS client profile name is certificateAuthorityTLSProfile.

- 13. Select the **Rewrite URL** check box.
- 14. Click **Add** at the bottom of the page to create a set of rules and configure the rules as described in <u>External traffic rules for a single FQDN deployment</u> on page 154.
- 15. Click Finish.

Related links

External traffic rules in a multiple FQDN deployment on page 158 Reverse proxy configuration checklist for a multiple FQDN deployment on page 149

External traffic rules in a multiple FQDN deployment

Traffic rules for Avaya Meetings Server Management

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<="" td=""><td>/uwd/</td><td>/uwd/</td><td>Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Equinox</td></equinox>	/uwd/	/uwd/	Equinox Conference Control (UCCS) Equinox
FQDN>:443	rest	rest	Management FQDN resolves to the virtual IP of the
			Equinox Management Server.

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<equinox management<br="">FQDN>:443</equinox>	/uwd/ws	/uwd/ rest	If you are using a standalone system, this FQDN resolves to the virtual IP address. For example: conferencing_management.company.com.

Traffic rules for Web Collaboration Services

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<wcsx fqdn="">: 443</wcsx>	/	/	Avaya Aura [®] Media Server. You must create one entry per each Web Collaboration Services server. The FQDN is the FQDN of each Avaya Aura [®] Media Server, and it resolves to the corresponding Avaya Aura [®] Media Server IP. For example: webconference1.company.com, webconference2.company.com, and so on.

Traffic rules for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway/Portal

Server Address	White list URL	URL replace	Description
<avaya aura<sup="">® Web Gateway Virtual IP FQDN>: 8444</avaya>	/	/	Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway. You must use the FQDN that resolves to the virtual IP address of the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway system. For example: webgateway.company.com.

External client access configuration

The following sections describe how to configure Avaya SBCE if you are planning to use any external clients, including WebRTC, mobile, or desktop clients, outside the enterprise firewall.

External client access configuration checklist

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist if you are planning to use any external clients, including WebRTC, mobile, or desktop clients, outside the enterprise firewall.

No.	Task	Notes	5
1	Create a server TLS profile for a management interface.	See <u>Checklist for creation of a TLS server</u> profile for a management interface on page 160.	

No.	Task	Notes	~
2	Configure Avaya SBCE load monitoring.	See <u>Configuring Avaya SBCE load</u> <u>monitoring</u> on page 161.	
3	Add Avaya SBCE to the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.	See <u>Adding Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise to the Avaya</u> <u>Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 162.	
4	If you have conferencing, add Avaya SBCE to Avaya Meetings Server Management.	See Adding Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to Avaya Meetings Server Management on page 163.	
5	Configure WebRTC client side TURN.	See <u>WebRTC client side TURN</u> <u>configuration</u> on page 164.	
6	Configure support for external native media clients.	See <u>External native clients media</u> <u>configuration</u> on page 168.	

Checklist for creation of a TLS server profile for a management interface

Perform the tasks in this checklist to configure certificates and create a TLS server profile for a management interface. This is required for external client access configuration.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create a certificate signing request.	See <u>Creating a certificate signing request on</u> Avaya Session Border Controller for <u>Enterprise</u> on page 176.	
		When creating a CSR, use the following options:	
		• For Common Name , use the management interface FQDN. For example: asbce_management.company.com.	
		 For Subject Alternative Name, provide both the FQDN and IP address of the management interface. For example: 	
		DNS:asbce_management.company.com IP:10.10.10.10	
2	Download and save created .KEY and .CSR files.		

No.	Task	Notes	~
3	Send the .CSR file to the System Manager CA for signing.	See <u>Signing certificates with the System</u> <u>Manager CA</u> on page 177.	
4	Install the signed certificate and the key on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing the certificate, use a descriptive name. For example: asbceManagementCert.	
5	Create a TLS server profile using the installed certificate.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating a profile, use the certificate installed on the Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: asbceManagementTlsProfile.	

External client access configuration checklist on page 159

Configuring Avaya SBCE load monitoring

About this task

Perform this procedure if you are using external clients in your deployment.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have:

• The internal A1 interface that will be used for load monitoring.

Note:

This A1 interface must also be used for the TURN relay setup.

- An FQDN for the Avaya SBCE management interface. For more information, see <u>Required</u> <u>FQDNs and certificates</u> on page 29.
- A TLS server profile. For more information about creating this profile, see <u>Checklist for</u> <u>creation of a TLS server profile for a management interface</u> on page 160.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Advanced Options > Load Monitoring**.
- 3. Click **Add** to create a new monitoring profile.
- 4. In Load Balancer Type, select INTERNAL.

This is the load balancer on the A1 side of the network. Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway performs load balancing towards the internal side. All HTTP requests sent for dialing out use the internal load balancer logic to identify the appropriate Avaya SBCE.

- 5. In Transport, select TLS.
- 6. In **TLS Profile**, select the TLS server profile that you created.

For more information, see the tasks outlined in <u>Checklist for creation of a TLS server</u> profile for a management interface on page 160.

7. In Listen IP, select the internal A1 interface.

To enable external WebRTC clients, the same interface must be configured for the TURN server as the A1 interface.

- 8. In Service Type, select TURN.
- 9. Click Finish.

Next steps

Add Avaya SBCE to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

Adding Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal.
- 2. Click **Add** to add a new Avaya SBCE or click **Edit** to update the information for the existing Avaya SBCE connection.
- 3. In **SIP Address**, type the FQDN or IP address of the internal A1 interface of the Avaya SBCE that is used for SIP signaling to interact with Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.

For more information, see External native clients media configuration on page 168.

- 4. In IP Port, enter 5061.
- 5. In SIP Protocol, select TLS.
- 6. In **HTTP Address**, type the internal Avaya SBCE FQDN specified for the load monitoring entry.

For example: asbce_management.company.com.

- 7. In HTTP Port, enter 443.
- 8. In HTTP Protocol, select https.
- 9. In Location, specify the location of the Avaya SBCE server.
- 10. Click Save.

Next steps

If you have conferencing, add Avaya SBCE to Avaya Meetings Server Management.

Adding Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to Avaya Meetings Server Management

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Meetings Management web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **Devices > Devices by Type > ASBCE**.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. On the Add ABSCE page, do the following:
 - a. In Name, enter a name for the Avaya SBCE server.
 - b. In IP Address, enter any of the Avaya SBCE IP addresses.
 - c. In Location, select the location of the Avaya SBCE server.
- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Select the Avaya SBCE name from the list and do the following:
 - a. In **Listen/Relay Internal IP**, enter the Avaya SBCE IP address of the internal A1 interface configured for the load balancer and for STUN/TURN interface.

For more information, see <u>Configuring Avaya SBCE load monitoring</u> on page 161 and <u>WebRTC client side TURN configuration</u> on page 164.

- b. In Port, enter 3478.
- c. In **Listen/Relay Public IP**, enter one of the following Avaya SBCE public IP addresses of the STUN/TURN interface:
 - The IP address of the external B1 interface.
 - The firewall NAT public IP address of the external B1 interface.

For more information about the B1 interface, see <u>WebRTC client side TURN</u> <u>configuration</u> on page 164.

- d. In Port, enter 3478.
- e. In **Internal SIP IP**, type the FQDN or IP address of the internal A1 interface of the Avaya SBCE that is used for SIP signaling.

For more information about interaction with Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, see <u>External</u> <u>native clients media configuration</u> on page 168.

- f. In SIP Protocol select TLS.
- g. In SIP Port, enter 5061.

h. In **Local HTTP IP**, enter the internal A1 address configured for the load monitoring entry.

For example, asbce management.company.com.

- i. In HTTP protocol, select https.
- j. In HTTP port, enter 443.
- 7. Click OK.

WebRTC client side TURN configuration

Avaya recommends using client side TURN instead of sever side TURN whenever possible. If you use server side TURN and WebRTC browsers are behind a firewall that blocks UDP traffic, you might experience issues with WebRTC calls. Clients are loaded from your browser and no installation is required on client users' computers.

Use these sections to enable client side TURN for WebRTC browsers outside your enterprise firewall.

To enable client side TURN, you need to open TCP port 443 on the external firewall.

Related links

External client access configuration checklist on page 159

Checklist for WebRTC client side TURN configuration

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist to configure external client access.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Verify prerequisites.	See <u>Prerequisites</u> on page 165.	
2	Create a TLS server profile that is used if media tunneling requires better readability through firewalls.	See <u>TLS server profile checklist for client side</u> <u>TURN configuration</u> on page 165.	
3	Configure firewall rules.	See Firewall configuration on page 166.	
4	Configure a TURN/STUN profile for WebRTC calls on Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Configuring a TURN/STUN profile for</u> <u>WebRTC calls on Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise</u> on page 166.	
5	Configure the TURN relay service for WebRTC calls on Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Configuring the TURN relay service for</u> <u>WebRTC calls on Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise</u> on page 167.	
6	Configure a STUN server on the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.	See <u>TURN/STUN service configuration on the</u> <u>Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 168.	
7	Enable TURN usage in a WebRTC client.	See <u>Enabling TURN usage in a WebRTC</u> <u>client</u> on page 168.	

Prerequisites

Before configuring WebRTC client side TURN settings, do the following:

- Add Avaya SBCE to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. For more information, see <u>Adding</u> <u>Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to the Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 162.
- Configure one B1 interface IP address on the Avaya SBCE.

Additional internal A1 interfaces are not required. Use the same A1 interface IP that you used for load monitoring. For more information, see <u>Configuring Avaya SBCE load monitoring</u> on page 161.

TLS server profile checklist for client side TURN configuration

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist to create a TLS server profile that is used if media tunneling requires better readability through firewalls.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create a certificate signing request.	See <u>Certificate setup</u> on page 176.	
		Use the following options:	
		• For Common Name , use the TURN media FQDN. For example: turnmedia.company.com.	
		• For Subject Alternative Name, use the TURN media FQDN. For example: DNS:turnmedia.company.com.	
2	Download and save the created .KEY and .CSR files.		
3	Send the .CSR file to a public CA for signing.		
4	Install the signed certificate and the key on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing the certificate, use a descriptive name. For example: turnmediaCert.	
5	Create a TLS server profile using the installed certificate.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating a profile, use the certificate installed on the Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: turnmediaTlsProfile.	

Firewall configuration

External firewall rules

Port	Protocol	Decription
443	TLS	For TLS TURN. For traffic that runs from the internet to Avaya SBCE on the B interface.
		This option is only required if you are using TLS TURN and it provides better readability through firewalls.
3478	TCP and UDP	For UDP media. For traffic that runs from the internet to Avaya SBCE on the B interface.
		This option is only required if you are using direct WebRTC media.

Internal firewall rules

Port	Protocol	Desciption
3478	UDP	For UPD media from Avaya SBCE. For traffic that runs from the A interface of Avaya SBCE to the MCU 7K servers and Avaya Aura [®] Media Server.
50000 to 55000	UDP	For UPD media from Avaya SBCE. For traffic that runs from the A interface of Avaya SBCE to the MCU 7K servers and Avaya Aura [®] Media Server.
12000 to 13200	UDP	For UPD media from media servers. For traffic that runs from MCU 7K servers to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.
16384 to 16984	UDP	For UPD media from media servers. For traffic that runs from MCU 7K servers to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.
6000 to 32588	UDP	For UPD media from media servers. For traffic that runs from Avaya Aura [®] Media Server to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.

Configuring a TURN/STUN profile for WebRTC calls on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration interface.
- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > TURN/STUN Service**.
- 3. From the Application pane, select the Avaya SBCE device for which the new TURN/STUN profile will be created.
- 4. Click TURN/STUN Profiles.
- 5. Click Add.

The system displays the Add TURN/STUN Profile window.

6. In **Profile Name**, provide a name for the TURN/STUN profile.

For example: turnProfileForWebrtcCalls.

- 7. In UDP Listen Port, enter 3478.
- 8. In TCP/TLS Listen Port, enter 443.
- 9. If TLS TURN media is required, then in **TLS Server Profile**, specify the TLS server profile for a management interface that you created.

For more information, see the tasks outlined in <u>TLS server profile checklist for client side</u> <u>TURN configuration</u> on page 165. An example of the TLS server profile name is turnmediaTlsProfile.

10. In **Media Relay Port Range**, specify a range that does not overlap with the port range used by Avaya SBCE for other protocols, such as SIP.

The default range is 50000 to 55000.

- 11. Select the **Authentication** check box.
- 12. Select the Client Authentication check box.
- 13. Select the UDP Relay check box.
- 14. Click Finish.

Configuring the TURN relay service for WebRTC calls on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration interface.
- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > TURN/STUN Service**.
- 3. From the Application pane, select the Avaya SBCE device for which you need to create a new TURN relay service.
- 4. Click TURN/STUN Relay.
- 5. Click Add.

The system displays the Add TURN/STUN IP Pairing window.

6. In Listen IP, provide the listen IP address of the TURN server from the B1 interface.

Important:

Do not use this IP address for any other interface bound to port 443.

- 7. In **Media Relay**, provide the media relay IP address of the TURN server from the internal A1 interface that you used for load monitoring.
- 8. In **Service FQDN**, provide the FQDN that resolves to the address specified in the **Listen IP** field.

For example, turnmedia.company.com.

9. In TURN/STUN Profile, select the TURN/STUN profile that you created for WebRTC calls.

10. Complete the following fields:

In **TURN/STUN Profile**, select the TURN/STUN profile that you created for WebRTC calls.

For example: turnProfileForWebrtcCalls. For more information, see Configuring a TURN/STUN profile for WebRTC calls on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise on page 166.

11. Click Finish.

TURN/STUN service configuration on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

You can add a new STUN server and set the STUN server priority from **External Access > STUN Servers** on the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal. If you use client side TURN, you must add the IP address of Avaya SBCE as a STUN server. Avaya recommends using client side TURN whenever possible.

You must use port 3478 when adding a new STUN server.

For more information about configuring STUN server settings on Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, see "Managing STUN server settings" in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Enabling TURN usage in a WebRTC client

Procedure

- 1. On the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal, navigate to **External Access** > **Session Border Controller**.
- 2. Select the Enable TURN in WebRTC Client check box.
- 3. Click Save.

External native clients media configuration

Use the following sections if you are planning to use Avaya Workplace Client mobile and desktop clients outside of your enterprise firewall.

Related links

External client access configuration checklist on page 159

External native clients media configuration checklist

Perform the tasks outlined in this checklist if you are planning to use Avaya Workplace Client mobile and desktop clients outside of your enterprise firewall.

No.	Task	TLS server profile required for SIP communications with Avaya SBCE	~
1	Verify prerequisites.	See Prerequisites on page 169.	

No.	Task	TLS server profile required for SIP communications with Avaya SBCE	~
1	Create a TLS server profile for required for SIP communications with Avaya SBCE.	See <u>TLS server profile checklist for external</u> <u>native clients media configuration</u> on page 169.	
		In a multiple FQDN deployment, you can use the TLS server profile for Avaya Meetings Server Management, which you created during the reverse proxy configuration. For more information, see <u>Checklist for creating</u> <u>TLS server profiles for reverse proxy in a</u> <u>multiple FQDN deployment</u> on page 151.	
2	Create a TLS server profile for HTTP media tunneling.	See <u>TLS server profile checklist for media</u> <u>tunneling interfaces</u> on page 170.	
3	Configure firewall rules.	See Firewall configuration on page 171.	
4	Configure the Avaya SBCE signaling interface.	See <u>Configuring the Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise signaling interface</u> on page 172.	
5	Configure the Avaya SBCE media interface.	See <u>Configuring the Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise media interface</u> on page 173.	
6	Configure Avaya SBCE server flows.	See <u>Configuring Avaya Session Border</u> <u>Controller for Enterprise server flows</u> on page 174.	

Prerequisites

Before configuring support for external native clients media, do the following:

- Add Avaya SBCE to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. For more information, see <u>Adding</u> <u>Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise to the Avaya Aura Web Gateway</u> on page 162.
- Configure one A interface IP address and one B interface IP address on the Avaya SBCE.

TLS server profile checklist for external native clients media configuration

Perform the following tasks to create a TLS server profile required for SIP communications with Avaya SBCE.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create a certificate signing request.	See <u>Certificate setup</u> on page 176.	
		Use the following options:	
		• For Common Name, use the Avaya Meetings Management FQDN. For example: conferencing_management.company. com.	
		• For Subject Alternative Name, use the Avaya Meetings Management FQDN. For example: DNS:conferencing_management.comp any.com.	
2	Download and save the created .KEY and .CSR files.		
3	Send the .CSR file to the System Manager CA for signing.	See <u>Signing certificates with the System</u> <u>Manager CA</u> on page 177.	
4	Install the signed certificate and the key on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing the certificate, use a descriptive name. For example: conferencingManagementSipCert.	
5	Create a TLS server profile using the installed certificate.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating a profile, use the certificate installed on Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: conferencingManagementSipTlsProfil e.	

External native clients media configuration checklist on page 168 TLS server profile checklist for media tunneling interfaces on page 170

TLS server profile checklist for media tunneling interfaces

Perform the following tasks to create a TLS server profile required for SIP communications with Avaya SBCE.

No.	Task	Notes	~
1	Create a certificate signing request.	See Certificate setup on page 176.	
		Use the following options:	
		• For Common Name , use the HTTP media tunneling FQDN. For example: media.company.com.	
		• For Subject Alternative Name, use the HTTPS media tunneling. For example: DNS:media.company.com.	
2	Download and save the created .KEY and .CSR files.		
3	Send the .CSR file to a public CA for signing.		
4	Install the signed certificate and the key on the Avaya SBCE.	See <u>Installing a certificate and a key</u> on page 178.	
		When installing the certificate, use a descriptive name. For example: mediaCert.	
5	Create a TLS server profile using the installed certificate.	See <u>Creating a TLS server profile</u> on page 181.	
		When creating a profile, use the certificate installed on Avaya SBCE in the previous step.	
		Provide a descriptive name for the profile. For example: mediaTlsProfile.	

External native clients media configuration checklist on page 168 TLS server profile checklist for external native clients media configuration on page 169

Firewall configuration

External firewall rules

Port	Protocol	Description
443	ТСР	For HTTPS media tunneling. From the internet to Avaya SBCE on the B interface.
		This option is only required if you are using media tunneling and it requires better readability through firewalls.
35000 to 40000	UDP	For UDP media. From the internet to Avaya SBCE on the B interface.
		This option is only required if you are using direct RTP media.

Port	Protocol	Description
3400, 3580	TCP	For UDP media. From the internet to Avaya SBCE on the B interface.
		This option is only required if you are using direct RTP media.

Internal firewall rules

Port	Protocol	Description
35000 to 40000	UDP	For UDP media from Avaya SBCE. For media traffic that runs from the A interface of Avaya SBCE to the MCU 7K and MCU 6K servers.
12000 to 13200	UDP	For UDP media from media services. For media traffic that runs from MCU 7K servers to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.
16384 to 16984	UDP	For UDP media from media services. For media traffic that runs from MCU 7K servers to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.
6000 to 17999	UDP	For UDP media from media services. For media traffic that runs from Avaya Aura [®] Media Server to the A interface of Avaya SBCE.
5061	TCP	For SIP communications. For traffic that runs from the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway to the Avaya SBCE SIP communications A interface.
5061	TCP	For SIP communications. For traffic that runs from the Avaya SBCE SIP communications A interface to the Avaya Meetings Management server.

Configuring the Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise signaling interface

About this task

Use this procedure to configure a signaling interface that will be used for SIP communication between the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway and Avaya SBCE.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Signaling Interface**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. In **Name**, provide a name.
- 5. In **IP Address**, provide the network name, identified by the interface name and VLAN tag, and IP address of the Avaya SBCE used by SIP signaling messages traversing the network.
- 6. Leave the TCP Port field blank.
- 7. Leave the UDP Port field blank.

- 8. In TLS Port, enter 5061.
- 9. In **TLS Profile**, select the TLS server profile created for SIP signaling.

For example: conferencingManagementSipTlsProfile. For more information, see <u>TLS server profile checklist for external native clients media configuration</u> on page 169.

10. Click Finish.

Configuring the Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise media interface

About this task

Media data can be passed through the default UDP port range or tunneled through port 443.

Procedure

1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.

Perform steps 2 and 3 if you want to set up media data tunneling through port 443. Otherwise, continue from step 4.

- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Advanced Options > Feature Control**.
- 3. Select the Media Tunneling check box and then click Save.
- 4. To configure an external media interface, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Media Interface** and then click **Add**.
 - b. In Name, provide a name for the media interface.

For example: externalMediaInterfaceProfile.

c. From IP Address, select the B1 IP address.

Important:

- Do not use this IP address for any other interface bound to port 443, such as for HTTP tunneling configuration.
- Do not use VLAN tag for the media tunneled interface.
- d. If you are using media tunneling, from **TLS Profile**, select the required TLS server profile for the media interface that you have created when performing <u>TLS server</u> profile checklist for media tunneling interfaces on page 170.

For example, mediaTlsProfile.

If media tunneling is disabled, set this field to None.

- e. In **Buffer Size**, provide the required buffer size for media data.
- 5. To configure the internal media interface, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Media Interface** and then click **Add**.
 - b. In Name, provide a name for the media interface.

For example: internalMediaInterfaceProfile.

- c. From IP Address, select the A1 IP address.
- 6. To enable video media, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Domain Policies > Application Rules** and then clone an existing media rule or create a new one.
 - b. For the new application rule, select **In** and **Out** for both the Audio and Video application types.
 - c. Configure **Maximum Concurrent Sessions** and **Maximum Sessions Per Endpoint** as required.
 - d. Click Finish.
- 7. To configure media encryption and enable Binary Floor Control Protocol (BFCP) or Far End Camera Control (FECC), do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Domain Policies > Media Rules** and clone an existing media rule or create a new one.
 - b. For the new media rule, navigate to **Encryption** > **Miscellaneous** and select the **Capacity Negotiation** check box.
 - c. On the Audio Encryption screen, in all **Preferred Format** fields, select **SRTP_AES_CM_128_HMAC_SHA1_80**.
 - d. On the Advanced tab, select the BFCP Enabled and FECC Enabled check boxes.
- 8. To configure a policy group using the newly created application and media rules, navigate to **Domain policies** > **End Point Policy Groups**, create a new group, and add the required application and media rules to that group.

Configuring Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise server flows

Before you begin

Ensure that you have the TLS client profile created when you configured a certificate authority for reverse proxy. For more information, see <u>Certificate Authority configuration checklist</u> on page 152. An example of the TLS client profile name is certficateAuthorityTlsProfile.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. To create an interworking profile, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to Global Profiles > Server Interworking and then select Add.
 - b. For the new profile, use the default options for all settings.
 - c. In the Advanced Options section, set Has Remote SBC to No (disabled).
- 3. To add a configuration for Avaya Meetings Management, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Global Profiles > Server Configuration** and then click **Add**.
 - b. From Sever Type, select Trunk Server.

- c. Leave SIP domain blank.
- d. From **TLS Client Profile**, select the TLS client profile that you created when you configured a certificate authority for reverse proxy.
- e. Add the Avaya Meetings Management FQDN with port 5061 and the TLS protocol specified.
- f. In the Advanced Options section, select the **Enable Grooming** check box and then select the previously created interworking profile.
- 4. To add a configuration for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Global Profiles > Server Configuration** and then click **Add**.
 - b. From Sever Type, select Trunk Server.
 - c. Leave SIP domain blank.
 - d. From **TLS Client Profile**, select the TLS client profile that you created when you configured a certificate authority for reverse proxy.
 - e. Add the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway FQDN with port 5061 and TLS protocol specified.
 - f. Repeat the previous substep for FQDNs of all Avaya Aura® Web Gateway nodes.
 - g. In the Advanced Options section, select the **Enable Grooming** check box and then select the interworking profile created in the previous step.
- 5. To add a flow for Avaya Meetings Management, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings** > **End Point Flows** > **Server Flows** and then select **Add**.
 - b. In Flow Name, provide a name for the flow.

For example: EqMngFlow.

- c. From **Server Configuration**, select the Avaya Meetings Management configuration that you created in step 3.
- d. From Received Interface, select the internal A1 interface.
- e. From Signaling Interface, select the internal A1 interface.
- f. From Media Interface, select the internal A1 interface.
- g. From End Point Policy Group, select required.
- 6. To add a flow for the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings** > **End Point Flows** > **Server Flows** and then select **Add**.
 - b. In Flow Name, provide a name for the flow.

For example: AAWGFlow.

c. From **Server Configuration**, select the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration that you created in step 4.

- d. From **Received Interface**, select the internal A1 interface.
- e. From Signaling Interface, select the internal A1 interface.
- f. From Media Interface, select the external B1 interface.
- g. From End Point Policy Group, select required.

Certificate setup

The following sections describe how to configure certificates. Use the web administration interface to configure System Manager certificates. The configuration utility (app configure) only supports third party certificates.

Creating a certificate signing request on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration interface.
- 2. Navigate to TLS Management > Certificates.
- 3. Click Generate CSR.
- 4. Complete the following fields:
 - a. **Country Name**: Provide the name of the country within which the certificate is being created in the ISO 3166 format.
 - b. **State/Province Name**: Provide the state or province where the certificate is being created.
 - c. Locality Name: Provide the city where the certificate is being created.
 - d. **Organization Name**: Provide the name of the company or organization creating the certificate.
 - e. **Organizational Unit**: Provide the group within the company or organization creating the certificate.
 - f. **Common Name**: Provide a FQDN that resolves to the IP address of the server where this certificate will be installed. You cannot provide wildcard (*) characters in the field.
 - g. Algorithm: Select SHA256.
 - h. Key Size (Modulus Length): Select 2048.
 - i. **Key Usage Extension(s)**: Select the purpose for which the public key might be used: Key Encipherment, Non-Repudiation, or Digital Signature.
 - j. Extended Key Usage: Select Server Authentication and Client Authentication.

k. **Subject Alt Name**: Provide information FQDNs or IP addresses that must be included into the certificate.

Use the following format: DNS:<FQDN>, IP:<IP address>.

You can specify multiple FQDNs or IP addresses.

- I. Passphrase: Proivde the password used when encrypting the private key.
- m. **Confirm Passphrase**: Reenter the password that you entered in the **Passphrase** field.
- n. **Contact Name**: Provide the name of the individual within the issuing organization acting as the point-of-contact for issues relating to this certificate.
- o. Contact E-mail: Provide the email address of the contact.
- 5. Click Generate CSR.
- 6. Download and save the CSR request file in the .CSR format.
- 7. Delete the key file generated and saved on Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise.

Next steps

Provide the .CSR file to a CA for signing.

Signing certificates with the System Manager CA

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the System Manager web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **Security > Certificates > Authority**.
- 3. Ensure that the certificate profile is set as follows:
 - a. Key Usage Extension set to Digital Signature and Key Encipherment.
 - b. Extended Key Usage: set to Server Authentication and Client Authentication.
- 4. If you do not have an end entity, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to Add End Entity.
 - b. Provide a user name and password for the new entity.

The user name and password are required for issuing the certificate.

- c. Continue performing the procedure from step 6.
- 5. If you already configured an end entity, do the following:
 - a. Navigate to Search End Entity.
 - b. Enter the user name that you provided when creating the entity and then click **Edit End Entity**.

- c. In Status, select New and enter the password.
- d. Continue performing the procedure from the following step.
- 6. Configure the end entity fields as follows:
 - a. Subject DN > CN: FQDN of the server interface that provides TLS support.
 - b. **Subject Alternative Name**: For **DNS name**, enter the FQDN of the server interface that provides TLS support, and for **IP Address**, enter the UP address of the IP requiring TLS support.
 - c. Certificate Profile: Enter ID CLIENT SERVER with relevant key features.
 - d. **CA**: Enter tmdefaultca.
 - e. Token: Select User Generated.
- 7. Click **Add** if you are configuring a new entity or **Save** if you are configuring the existing entity.
- 8. Navigate to **Public Web > Enroll**.
- 9. Click Create Certificate from CSR.
- 10. Enter the user name and password that you used when creating the end entity.
- 11. Open the CSR request file in the CSR format in a text editor and copy its content into a text box on the page.
- 12. In Result Type, select PEM certificate only.
- 13. Click OK.

A certificate file in the . PEM format is created.

14. Save the certificate file on an external storage device.

Next steps

Install the signed certificate.

Installing a certificate and a key

Procedure

1. Rename the certificate key in the . PEM format and the key file in the . KEY format so that these files use the same file name.

For example: certificate1.pem and certificate1.key.

Important:

Do not use the dot (.) symbol in the file name.

- 2. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 3. Navigate to TLS Management > Certificates.

- 4. Click Install.
- 5. Configure the following fields:
 - a. **Type**: Select a type of the certificate that you want to install.
 - b. Name: Provide a name for the certificate that you want to install.

This field is optional. If you do not provide a name, then the file name of the uploaded certificate file will be used as the certificate name.

😵 Note:

If you provide a name that matches the name of one of installed certificates, the system replaces that certificate with the certificate that you are installing.

c. **Override Existing**: Select if you can install a certificate with the name that matches the name of one of already installed certificates.

If the check box is cleared, the system displays an error message when you try to install a certificate with the same name. If the check box is selected, the system replaces the existing certificate with the certificate you are installing.

d. Allow Weak Certificate Key: Select if you can install a certificate signed using a weak key.

If the option is selected, the system bypasses the check that requires strong private keys. EMS rejects private keys lesser than 2048 bits or signed with an MD5 based hash by default.

e. Certificate File: Specify a location of the certificate file on your computer.

Important:

If the third-party CA provides separate Root CA and intermediate certificates, you must combine these certificates into a single file before installing to Avaya SBCE. To combine the files, append the content of each certificate file one after another. Add the content of the root CA certificate to the end of this single file.

f. Key: Specify the private key that you want to use.

You can opt to use the existing key from the file system or select a file containing another key.

g. Key File: Specify the key file.

This button is displayed when you select **Upload Key File** in the **Key** field.

6. Click Upload.

7. Log in to Avaya SBCE as root using an SSH connection.

The port is 222. Use the ipcs user name and password.

- 8. Navigate to the /usr/local/ipcs/cert/key directory.
- 9. Run the enc_key <filename> <passphrase> command.

In this command, <filename> is the name of the encryption key file and <passphrase> is the passphrase you used while generating the CSR.

10. Restart Avaya SBCE.

Installing the Avaya Meetings Management CA certificate to Avaya SBCE

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Meetings Management web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to Settings > Security > Certificates.
- 3. Click on the Avaya Meetings Management certificate and download the caroot.crt file.
- 4. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 5. Navigate to **TLS Management > Certificates**.
- 6. Click Install.
- 7. Configure the following fields:
 - a. Type: Select CA Certificate.
 - b. Name: Enter a name for the certificate.
 - c. **Overwrite Existing**: Select if you want to overwrite an existing certificate with the name that matches the name of the certificate you are installing.
 - d. Allow weak Certificate key: Select this check box if the CA certificate is signed with a week key.
 - e. Certificate File: Select the caroot.crt certificate downloaded from the Avaya Meetings Management web administration portal.
- 8. Click Upload.

Installing a CA certificate on Avaya SBCE

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the System Manager web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to Security > Certificates > Authority > CA Structure & CRLs.
- 3. Download the required CA certificate file in the . ${\tt PEM}$ format.
- 4. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 5. Navigate to TLS Management > Certificates.
- 6. Select Install.
- 7. Complete the following fields:
 - a. Type: Select CA Certificate.
 - b. Name: Enter a name for the certificate.

If you have not downloaded the Private Key, you must type the name you provided in the **Common Name** field while generating CSR. If you have downloaded the Private Key, you can type any name for the certificate.

- c. **Overwrite Existing**: Select if you need to replace the existing certificate that has the same name.
- d. Allow Weak Certificate Key: Select if the certificate is signed with a weak key.
- e. **Certificate File**: select the CA certificate file downloaded from Avaya Meetings Management.
- 8. Press Upload.

TLS client and server profiles setup

Creating a TLS server profile

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to TLS Management > Server Profiles.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In **Profile Name**, enter a name for the profile.
- 5. In **Certificate**, select the installed CA certificate that you want to associate with the profile.
- 6. If you are creating a profile for media tunneling interfaces, in the **Peer Verification** field, select **Optional**.
- 7. Complete the remaining fields as required and then click Next.
- 8. Select the required TLS versions and then click Finish.

The system displays the new profile on the Server Profile page.

Creating a TLS client profile

Procedure

1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.

- 2. Navigate to TLS Management > Client Profiles.
- 3. Click Add.
- 4. In **Profile Name**, enter a name for the profile.
- 5. In **Certificate**, select the installed CA certificate that you want to associate with the profile.
- 6. Complete the remaining fields as required and then click **Next**.
- 7. Select the required TLS versions and then click Finish.

The system displays the new profile on the Client Profile page.

Configuring Avaya SBCE network interfaces

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya SBCE web administration portal.
- 2. Navigate to **Device Specific Settings > Network Management > Networks**.
- 3. Configure the following interfaces:
 - Internal interface A1 with at least one IP address associated with it.
 - External interface B1 with at least one IP address associated with it.

Chapter 10: Resources

Documentation

The following table lists other related documentation. All Avaya documentation is available at <u>http://support.avaya.com/</u>. Many documents are also available at <u>http://</u><u>documentation.avaya.com/</u>.

Title	Use this document to:	Audience
Overview and planning		
Avaya Aura [®] Core Solution Description	Understand the strategic, enterprise, and functional views of the Avaya Aura [®] architecture.	 Customers Sales, services, and support personnel
Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager Feature Description and Implementation	Understand the features of Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager.	
What's New in Avaya Aura [®] Release	Understand the new and enhanced	Contractors
8.1.x	features of Avaya Aura [®] components.	 Employees
		 Channel associates
		 Sales, services, and support personnel
		 Avaya Business Partners
Using		
Avaya Scopia [®] Desktop Client User Guide	Use the Avaya Scopia [®] desktop client. This document also provides usage information for the user portal.	End users
Deploying		
Deploying Avaya Aura [®] Device Services	Install, administer, configure, and maintain Avaya Aura [®] Device Services.	Implementation personnel
Deploying Avaya Multimedia Messaging	Install, configure, and administer Avaya Multimedia Messaging.	

Table continues...

Title	Use this document to:	Audience
Deploying Avaya Meetings Server	Install, configure, and maintain the Avaya Meetings Server.	
Administering		
Administering Avaya Aura [®] Device Services	Use management tools, manage data and security, and perform periodic maintenance tasks in Avaya Aura [®] Device Services.	System administrators Implementation
Administering Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager	Administer Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager on the following servers:	 Implementation personnel Services and support personnel
	 Avaya media gateways 	
	 Avaya S8XXX Servers 	
Administering Network Connectivity on Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager	Understand the network components of Avaya Aura [®] Communication Manager.	
Administering Avaya Aura [®] Session Manager	Administer Avaya Aura [®] Session Manager.	-
Administering Avaya Aura [®] System Manager	Perform configuration and management tasks in Avaya Aura [®] System Manager.	
Administering Avaya Session Border Controller for Enterprise	Perform configuration, system administration, and troubleshooting tasks in Avaya Aura [®] Session Border Controller.	
Implementing and Administering Avaya Aura [®] Media Server	Perform configuration, system administration, and troubleshooting tasks in Avaya Aura [®] Media Server.	

Finding documents on the Avaya Support website

Procedure

- 1. Go to https://support.avaya.com.
- 2. At the top of the screen, type your username and password and click Login.
- 3. Click Support by Product > Documents.
- 4. In **Enter your Product Here**, type the product name and then select the product from the list.
- 5. In **Choose Release**, select the appropriate release number.

The Choose Release field is not available if there is only one release for the product.

6. In the **Content Type** filter, click a document type, or click **Select All** to see a list of all available documents.

For example, for user guides, click **User Guides** in the **Content Type** filter. The list only displays the documents for the selected category.

7. Click Enter.

Avaya Documentation Center navigation

The latest customer documentation for some programs is now available on the Avaya Documentation Center website at <u>https://documentation.avaya.com</u>.

Important:

For documents that are not available on Avaya Documentation Center, click **More Sites** > **Support** on the top menu to open <u>https://support.avaya.com</u>.

Using the Avaya Documentation Center, you can:

- Search for content by doing one of the following:
 - Click Filters to select a product and then type key words in Search.
 - From **Products & Solutions**, select a solution category and product, and then select the appropriate document from the list.
- Sort documents on the search results page.
- Click Languages () to change the display language and view localized documents.
- Publish a PDF of the current section in a document, the section and its subsections, or the entire document.
- Add content to your collection by using **My Docs** (\bigtriangleup).

Navigate to the Manage Content > My Docs menu, and do any of the following:

- Create, rename, and delete a collection.
- Add topics from various documents to a collection.
- Save a PDF of selected content in a collection and download it to your computer.
- Share content in a collection with others through email.
- Receive collection that others have shared with you.
- Add yourself as a watcher using the Watch icon (

Navigate to the Manage Content > Watchlist menu, and do the following:

- Enable Include in email notification to receive email alerts.
- Unwatch selected content, all content in a document, or all content on the Watch list page.

As a watcher, you are notified when content is updated or deleted from a document, or the document is removed from the website.

- Share a section on social media platforms, such as Facebook, LinkedIn, and Twitter.
- · Send feedback on a section and rate the content.

😵 Note:

Some functionality is only available when you log on to the website. The available functionality depends on the role with which you are logged in.

Training

Avaya Workplace Client solution courses and credentials, such as ACCS-7240, also include information about Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway. You can access training courses at <u>http://www.avaya-learning.com</u>.

Viewing Avaya Mentor videos

Avaya Mentor videos provide technical content on how to install, configure, and troubleshoot Avaya products.

About this task

Videos are available on the Avaya Support website, listed under the video document type, and on the Avaya-run channel on YouTube.

- To find videos on the Avaya Support website, go to <u>https://support.avaya.com/</u> and do one of the following:
 - In Search, type Avaya Mentor Videos, click Clear All and select Video in the Content Type.
 - In **Search**, type the product name. On the Search Results page, click **Clear All** and select **Video** in the **Content Type**.

The Video content type is displayed only when videos are available for that product.

In the right pane, the page displays a list of available videos.

- To find the Avaya Mentor videos on YouTube, go to <u>www.youtube.com/AvayaMentor</u> and do one of the following:
 - Enter a key word or key words in the **Search Channel** to search for a specific product or topic.
 - Scroll down Playlists, and click a topic name to see the list of videos available for the topic. For example, Contact Centers.

😵 Note:

Videos are not available for all products.

Support

Go to the Avaya Support website at <u>https://support.avaya.com</u> for the most up-to-date documentation, product notices, and knowledge articles. You can also search for release notes, downloads, and resolutions to issues. Use the online service request system to create a service request. Chat with live agents to get answers to questions, or request an agent to connect you to a support team if an issue requires additional expertise.

Using the Avaya InSite Knowledge Base

The Avaya InSite Knowledge Base is a web-based search engine that provides:

- · Up-to-date troubleshooting procedures and technical tips
- · Information about service packs
- Access to customer and technical documentation
- Information about training and certification programs
- Links to other pertinent information

If you are an authorized Avaya Partner or a current Avaya customer with a support contract, you can access the Knowledge Base without extra cost. You must have a login account and a valid Sold-To number.

Use the Avaya InSite Knowledge Base for any potential solutions to problems.

- 1. Go to http://www.avaya.com/support.
- 2. Log on to the Avaya website with a valid Avaya user ID and password.

The system displays the Avaya Support page.

- 3. Click Support by Product > Product-specific Support.
- 4. In Enter Product Name, enter the product, and press Enter.
- 5. Select the product from the list, and select a release.
- 6. Click the **Technical Solutions** tab to see articles.
- 7. Select relevant articles.

Appendix A: Certificate configuration using the configuration utility

The following sections describe how to configure certificates using the configuration utility process. You can only use the configuration utility for the configuration of third party certificates. If you are using System Manager certificates, you must use the web administration portal.

You can also manage and update certificates using the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal. For more information about working with the web administration portal, see *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Important:

The web administration portal is the preferred method for managing certificates. Use the configuration utility process to configure certificates for troubleshooting purposes, but after this is done, perform certificate management from the web administration portal when possible.

Generating Certificate Signing Requests

About this task

Use this procedure to generate a Certificate Signing Request (CSR).

Important:

You must use this procedure if you are not using System Manager as the only Certificate Authority (CA) to sign certificates for all solution components.

Before you begin

Ensure that Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is successfully installed with System Manager signed certificates. This is the default setting for installation.

Procedure

1. Run the following command:

```
sudo mkdir /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts
sudo chmod 770 /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts
```

The system creates an AAWGportalCerts directory in /opt/Avaya/ for the output of the script that will generate the CSRs.

2. Run the following command to navigate to the directory containing the script:

cdto misc

3. To generate a CSR, run the following command:

```
sudo ./createCSR.sh /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts frontEndFQDN localFQDN
organizationNameorganizationUnit locality stateOrProvince countryCode emailAddress
```

Important:

This command is a single Linux command and must be entered as a single line even if it appears as several lines in the document.

The parameters for this script are:

- frontendFQDN: For a cluster installation, this is the FQDN of the Virtual IP or external load balancer. For simple, non-clustered installations, this is the FQDN of the server where Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway is installed.
- localFQDN: The FQDN of the server.
- orgnizationName: The name of the organization.
- organizationUnit: The name of the unit or sub-organization. For example, "Design".
- locality: The name of the city or town.
- state: The two-digit state or province code.
- countryCode: The two-digit country code.
- emailAddress: The administrator email address.
- 4. Verify that /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts contains the .key and .csr files for frontend, node, OAMP, and SIP.

Only the frontEnd.csr and frontEnd.key files are used. You can ignore the sip, oamp & node .csr and .key files.

Getting certificates signed by the third-party CA

About this task

Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway accepts certificates in either the PEM or PKCS12 formats.

😵 Note:

• PEM is a Base64 encoded ASCII format. The certificate data is prefixed with the -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- line and followed by the -----END CERTIFICATE----line. The most common file name extensions are .pem, crt, and cer. • PKCS12 is a binary format that contains the server certificate, intermediate certificates and the private key in a single encryptable file. The file name extensions for this format are .pfx and .p12.

Before you begin

- Ensure that the CA is configured to include extendedKeyUsage for both the client and the server in the generated certificates.
- Open the Linux shell using the Linux administrator account credentials.

Procedure

- 1. Transfer the frontEnd.csr file from Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway so that it can be used during signed certificate generation process on your third-party CA.
- 2. Transfer certificates to Avaya Aura® Web Gateway.
 - a. Transfer the signed .crt file to /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts, and name it frontEnd.crt.
 - b. Transfer the third-party root CA certificate to /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts, and name it rootCA.crt.
 - c. Transfer any third-party intermediary CA certificates to /opt/Avaya/ AAWGportalCerts, and name them intermediary1.crt, intermediary2.crt, and so on in ascending order of the certificate chain until the root CA.
- 3. To create a certificate chain containing the front end certificate, arrange all intermediary CA certificates (if any) and the root CA certificate in the correct order, and then run the following command:

cat frontEnd.crt intermediary1.crt intermediary2.crt ... rootCA.crt >
frontEndCerts.crt

Applying third-party signed certificates to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

Procedure

1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.

The Linux administrator account is created during the deployment process.

- 2. To open the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration utility, run the following command: app configure
- 3. Select Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration.
- 4. Select Use System Manager for Certificates, and then select No.

- 5. Select the following options, type the file path shown, and then select **OK** for each option:
 - a. For **REST interface key file**, type /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts/ frontEnd.key.
 - b. For REST interface certificate file, type value /opt/Avaya/ AAWGportalCerts/frontEndCerts.crt.
 - c. For OAM interface key file, type value /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts/ frontEnd.key.
 - d. For OAM interface certificate file, type value /opt/Avaya/AAWGportalCerts/ frontEndCerts.crt.
 - e. For **Keystore password**, type the same keystore password that you used at the time of installation.
- 6. Select **Apply** and **Continue** for the specified certificates to be processed.
- 7. Select Exit Configure to exit this menu.

Adding third-party root CA certificates to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway

About this task

Use this procedure to trust additional root CAs. For example, you can add the:

- LDAP root CA certificate if you are using a secure LDAP connection.
- SIP CA certificate if Session Manager has certificates signed by the SIP CA.

You can manage truststore certificates by using the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway administration portal as described in *Administering the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway*.

Do not use this procedure to add the System Manager root CA certificate because that was already added during the initial installation.

Procedure

1. Run the following command to open the configuration utility:

app configure

- 2. Select Add a Certificate to the TrustStore.
- 3. To add a certificate, select Certificate file and specify the path to the file.
- 4. Select Apply.

If the provided file contains certificate chain, then all certificates will be added to the truststore.

Creating a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using OpenSSL

About this task

Use this procedure to generate a CSR using OpenSSL.

You can also generate a CSR using the Avaya Aura® Web Gateway web administration portal.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have the OpenSSL utility.

Procedure

1. Create an OpenSSL configuration file.

For example:

```
[ req ]
req_extensions = v3_req
distinguished_name = req_distinguished_name
[req_distinguished_name]
[ v3_req ]
basicConstraints = CA:FALSE
keyUsage = nonRepudiation, digitalSignature, keyEncipherment
subjectAltName = @alt_names
[alt_names]
DNS.1 = dnsserver10927.company.com
DNS.2 = dnsserver10938.company.com
DNS.3 = dnsserver10955.company.com
```

The alt_names section defines the Subject Alternative Names list and must contain FQDNs of all nodes in the cluster.

2. Run the following command:

```
openssl req -out <CSR_request_file>.csr -newkey rsa:2048 -nodes -keyout
<CSR_key_file>.key -config <configuration_file>
```

In this command:

- <CSR request file>.csr specifies a CSR file name.
- <CSR_key_file>.key specifies a file containing a private key that is used to add the signed certificate to the system.
- <configuration_file> specifies the OpenSSL configuration file that was created in the previous step.

For example:

```
openssl req -out createCSR.csr -newkey rsa:2048 -nodes -keyout keyCSR.key -config
configCSR.config
```

Signing identity certificates for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using third-party CA certificates

About this task

You can use the following procedure to sign identity certificates for Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using third-party CA certificates.

😵 Note:

In the following procedure, the third-party CA certificate can be a public CA or an internal private CA.

Before you begin

- Create a CSR with the following X509 extensions:
 - keyUsage = nonRepudiation, digitalSignature, keyEncipherment
 - extendedKeyUsage = serverAuth, clientAuth
- Ensure that the CSR contains the following:
 - If the certificate is only used on the Avaya SBCE, the request contains the subjectAltName extension that lists the cluster FQDN in the SAN.
 - If the certificate is used on both Avaya SBCE and the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server, the request contains the subjectAltName extension that lists the cluster FQDN as well as the FQDN of each cluster member in the SAN.

😵 Note:

From the security perspective, Avaya recommends that you generate separate certificates for each node, including the cluster FQDN and the individual cluster node FQDN in subjectAltName.

- Do not provide the password for a key because password protected keys are not supported.
- Ensure that the key generated along with the CSR is stored safely.
- Ensure that once the certificate is generated, you have received the identity certificate, root CA certificate, and all intermediate CA certificates in the . PEM format from the certification authority. If these certificates are not in the . PEM format, you can convert these certificates using the OpenSSL tool.
- Generate the identity certificate chain as described in <u>Generating an identity certificate</u> <u>chain</u> on page 194.
- Obtain the System Manager root CA certificate.

Procedure

- 1. Log on to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using your SSH credentials.
- 2. Go to /opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/version/CAS/version/nginx/certs.
- 3. Run the following command:

```
sudo cat rootCA.pem >> auth_ca.crt
```

In this command, >> is used to append the root CA certificate file to the end of the auth ca.crt file.

4. Check that each certificate in the auth_ca.crt file is correct using the OpenSSL command.

You should see the new root CA certificate and the System Manager root CA certificate.

- 5. Import the intermediate CA certificate and the root CA certificate to the Avaya SBCE trust store if you are using reverse proxy on the Avaya SBCE to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway.
- 6. Run the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway configuration utility using the app configure command.
- 7. Click Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration.
- 8. Click **Use System Manager for Certificates** and type n to not use System Manager for certificates.
- 9. Click **REST Interface certificate configuration**. If the certificate is not in the PKCS12 format, type n on the REST Interface certificate configuration screen.
- 10. Add the key file to the REST interface PEM key file and the certificate chain to the REST interface PEM certificate file.
- 11. Click **Signing authority certificate configuration** on the Front-end host, System Manager and Certificate Configuration screen.
- 12. If the CA root certificate is not in the PKCS12 format, type n.
- 13. Click Signing Authority PEM certificate file and add the signing authority CA certificate.
- 14. Click Return to previous menu.
- 15. Click Apply.

Generating an identity certificate chain

About this task

If you want to use an identity certificate signed by a third-party certificate authority (CA), you must generate an identity certificate chain. An identity certificate chain must include the following certificates in order:

- 1. The third-party CA-signed identity certificate.
- 2. All intermediate CA certificates, if any.
- 3. The root CA certificate.

Assign this certificate chain to a specific Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway server interface.

Before you begin

Upload the third-party CA-signed identity certificate, root CA certificate, and all intermediate CA certificates in the PEM format to Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using a file transfer program, such as SFTP or SCP.

Procedure

- 1. Log in to the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway using your SSH credentials.
- 2. Navigate to the directory with the certificates.
- 3. Run the cat command as follows:

```
cat <Identity_ertificate_file_name>
<Intermediate_CA_certificate_file_name> <Root_CA_file_name> >
<Certificate_chain_file_name>
```

If you have several intermediate CA certificates, list all intermediate CA certificate file names, separated by a space, and then list the root CA certificate file name.

For example, if you have the identity certificate identity.crt, two intermediate CA certificates (intermediateCA1.crt and intermediateCA2.crt), and root CA certificate rootCA.crt, run the following command to generate a certificate chain with the identityChain.crt file name:

```
cat identity.crt intermediateCA1.crt intermediateCA2.crt rootCA.crt
> identityChain.crt
```

Configuring System Manager to trust third-party root CA certificates

Procedure

- 1. Log on to the System Manager web console.
- 2. Click Home > Services > Inventory > Manage Elements .
- 3. Select System Manager from the Elements.
- 4. Click Configure Trusted Certificates in the More Actions list.
- 5. Click Add and select Import from file.
- 6. Click Choose File and browse to the third-party root CA certificate.
- 7. Click Commit.
- 8. Restart the System Manager JBOSS[™] process.

From the SSH session on the System Manager, run the following command as a root user:

service jboss restart

😵 Note:

The **service** jboss **restart** command affects the service for the System Manager.

Creating a client certificate

About this task

Use this procedure to create a client certificate, which can be imported into a web browser for authenticating automatic login into the Avaya Aura[®] Web Gateway web administration portal.

Procedure

- 1. Open the Linux shell using your Linux administrator account credentials.
- 2. Run the following command to create the oamp.csr and oamp.key files:

sudo /opt/Avaya/CallSignallingAgent/<version>/CAS/<version>/misc/createCSR.sh

- To generate the .pem file, on the System Manager web console, navigate to Services > Security > Certificates > Authority.
- 4. Click the **Add End Entity** tab and complete the following settings:
 - a. Set End Entity Profile to Empty.
 - b. Type your user name and password in Username and Password.
 - c. Type your user ID in CN, Common name.

The user ID you provide must use the same format that you used for the **UID Attribute ID** field on the LDAP Configuration tab.

- d. Set Certificate Profile to ENDUSER.
- e. Click Add.

A new end entity with the specified user name is created on the System Manager web console.

- 5. In the left navigation pane, click the **Public Web** tab and complete the following settings:
 - a. In **Username** and **Enrollment code**, type the same user name and password that you used to create an end entity.
 - b. Click **Choose File** to add the oamp.csr file, which you generated in step <u>2</u> on page 196.
 - c. Click OK to generate the .pem file .
- 6. In the SSH console, run the openss1 command to convert the .pem file to a .pfx/.p12 file.

The following is an example of the command:

```
sudo openssl pkcs12 -export -out <.p12 file name>-in <.pem file name>.pem -inkey
oamp.key -passout pass:<password>
```

Importing client certificates into web browsers

About this task

Use this procedure to import client certificates to the Google Chrome, Internet Explorer, or Mozilla Firefox web browser. This is an optional procedure. After you perform this procedure, you will automatically be logged in to the web administration portal. The system will bypass the Login screen.

Before you begin

On the HTTP Clients tab, set **OAMP** to one of the following:

- **REQUIRED**: For certificate authentication.
- **OPTIONAL**: For certificate or password authentication.

For information on **OAMP** options, see <u>Available certificate validation options</u> on page 197.

Procedure

- 1. Navigate to the appropriate location in your web browser:
 - From Google Chrome, navigate to Settings > Show advanced settings > Manage certificates.
 - From Internet Explorer, navigate to **Tools > Internet options > Content > Certificates**.
 - From Mozzila Firefox, navigate to ≡ > Options > Advanced > Certificates > View Certificates.
- 2. Click Import to import the certificate to your browser.

When prompted for a password, enter the same password that was used in the **openssl** command to convert the .pem file to a .pfx or .p12 file.

🕒 Tip:

To override the certificate authentication, in the SSH console, set com.avaya.cas.common.certificateauth to 0 as follows:

CATALINA OPTS="\$CATALINA OPTS -Dcom.avaya.cas.common.certificateauth=0"

Available certificate validation options

Name	Description
OPTIONAL	Enables the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway to validate certificates presented by the clients to establish a secure HTTP connection with the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.
NONE	Prevents the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway from performing any validation on certificates presented by the clients. If you select this option, the client cannot perform trusted hosts-based authentication with the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.

Table continues...

Name	Description
OPTIONAL_NO_CA	Enables the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway to validate certificates presented by the clients. However, the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway does not require such certificates to be signed or issued by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA).
REQUIRED	Ensures that the clients present a valid certificate that is signed or issued by a trusted CA to establish a secure HTTP connection with the Avaya Aura [®] Web Gateway.

Glossary

Busy Hour Call Attempts	The maximum number of calls supported for one hour in peak traffic conditions.
Cassandra	Third party NoSQL database, which is used by Avaya Multimedia Messaging to store messaging data and configuration information. For more information, see <u>https://cassandra.apache.org/</u> .
Domain Name System (DNS)	A system that maps and converts domain and host names to IP addresses.
Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN)	A domain name that specifies the exact location of the domain in the tree hierarchy of the Domain Name System (DNS).
Network Time Protocol (NTP)	A protocol used to synchronize the real-time clock in a computer.
Secure Shell (SSH)	Secure Shell (SSH) is a group of standards and an associated network protocol that the system can use to establish a secure channel between a local and a remote computer. SSH uses public-key cryptography to mutually authenticate a user and a remote computer. SSH uses encryption and message authentication codes to protect the confidentiality and integrity of the data that is exchanged between the two computers.
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)	A protocol for managing devices on IP networks.
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Protocol	The SSL protocol is the leading security protocol on the Internet. It runs above the TCP/IP protocol and below higher-level protocols such as HTTP or IMAP. SSL uses TCP/IP on behalf of the higher-level protocols and, in the process, allows an SSL-enabled server to authenticate itself to an SSL-enabled client.
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol.
TLS	Transport Layer Security
UDP	User Datagram Protocol. This is a communication method, similar to TCP.

Index

Α

ABSCE
configuring server flows
adding
Avaya Aura Web Gateway <u>136</u>
adding third-party root certificates
Avaya Aura Web Gateway server <u>191</u>
administration portal
Linux account <u>132</u>
administrative user
creating <u>78</u>
advanced configuration <u>129</u>
Amazon Web Services
creating security groups <u>87</u>
managing load balancers
applying third-party certificates
Avaya Aura Web Gateway server <u>190</u>
architecture
diagram <u>12</u>
ASBCE
configuring
conliguring external client access <u>159</u>
multiple EODNs deployment 157
single FODN deployment
configuring internal traffic rules
configuring on AAWG
configuring everse proxy 148 149
configuring TURN relay for WebRTC 167
creating CRS
CSR
creating request on ASBCE 176
installing CA certificates
overview
attributes replication <u>127</u>
automatic backups
changing default password <u>131</u>
available certificate validation options <u>197</u>
Avaya Aura Device Services
uploading Avaya IX Workplace clients <u>143</u>
Avaya Aura Wewb Gateway
VMware software requirements <u>30</u>
Avaya IX Workplace
uploading installation files on Device Services
Avaya meetings Server
Configuration
configuring details using the AWS CLI 59
manage load balancer certificates
AWS cluster deployments 65
AWS installation

AWS installation (continued)	
incorrect characters in hosts file	<u>101</u>
AWS resource profiles	
specifications	. <u>31</u>

С

CA signed certificates	193
Cassandra	
changing default password	<u>130</u>
certificate	
for reverse proxy1	<u>50, 151</u>
installing	<u>178</u>
setup	<u>188</u>
signing identity certificates using CA certificates	<u>193</u>
signing with System Manager CA	<u>177</u>
certificate authority	
configuring for reverse proxy	<u>152</u>
certificates	
creating client certificate	<u>196</u>
generating identity certificate chain	<u>194</u>
importing to web browsers	197
load balancer certificates for AWS deployment	65
certificate signing requests	192
generating	188
changing	
Cassandra password	
characters in passwords	
checking	····· <u>··</u>
NTP status	84
checking connection	<u>v i</u>
System Manager	84
checklist	······ <u>• ·</u>
AWS deployment	49
configuring	<u>10</u>
	1/0
external client access configuration	<u>143</u> 159
external pative clients media configuration	<u>155</u> 168
planning	<u>100</u> 26
roverse provy configuration	
multiple EODNe deployment	140
aingle FODN deployment	<u>149</u> 149
Single FQDN deployment	<u>140</u>
WebDTC elient eide TUDN configuration	
vebric client side TORN conliguration	<u>104</u>
clients	140
uploading Avaya IX workplace to Device Services	· <u>143</u>
	104
	<u>127</u>
collection	10-
	<u>185</u>
edit name	<u>185</u>
generating PDF	<u>185</u>
sharing content	<u>185</u>

commands
system layer
completing
first time login <u>72</u>
components
configuration
advanced configuration <u>129</u>
conferencing <u>144</u>
LDAP advanced parameters in Configuration Utility <u>119</u>
LDAP parameters in Configuration Utility
configuration worksheet
configure
ABSCE signaling interface <u>172</u>
ASBCE load monitoring <u>161</u>
ASBCE network interfaces <u>182</u>
ASBCE on AAWG <u>162</u>
ASBCE server flow <u>174</u>
DNS <u>133</u>
Equinox conference control <u>134</u>
external native clients media <u>168</u>
front-end FQDN <u>133</u>
media interface for ASBCE <u>173</u>
Web Collaboration <u>135</u>
configuring
ASBCE
ASBCE on Avaya Meetings Server
Avaya Aura Device Services
Avaya Aura Media Server <u>141</u>
Avaya Aura Web Gateway <u>143</u>
certificates
external client access
external native clients media <u>168</u>
Media Server <u>140</u>
password rules <u>45</u>
registration expiration timer <u>140</u>
reverse proxy <u>148, 149</u>
role search parameters <u>124</u>
RSA public and private keys <u>107</u>
SIP Trunks
SSH connections
STUN on AAWG <u>168</u>
System Manager <u>140</u>
WebRTC client side TURN
configuring AAWG
settings
configuring on AAWG
configuring on-premise DNS
configuring on-premise DNS resolution
VPC addresses71
connection types
content
publishing PDF output
searching
sharing
sort by last updated
watching for updates
create

create (continued)	
administrative user	<u>78</u>
create a cluster	
installing additional nodes	<u>104</u>
creating	
client certificate	<u>196</u>
disk partitioning for software-only	<u>76</u>
Elastic load balancer on AWS	<u>93</u>
server profile for management interface	<u>160</u>
TLS client profile	<u>181</u>
TLS server profile	<u>181</u>
TLS server profile for client side TURN	<u>165</u>
TLS server profile for eternal native clients media .	<u>169</u>
TLS server profile for media tunneling interface	<u>170</u>
Creating a bucket	
OVAs for AMI conversion	<u>59</u>
creating a hybrid cloud	
client access	<u>70</u>
creating a key pair	<u>58</u>
Creating CloudFormation templates	<u>62</u>
creating service role	<u>60</u>
6	

D

data encryption	
encryptionPassPhrase command	<u>47</u>
field descriptions	<u>53</u>
overview	<u>20</u>
data encryption commands	<u>47</u>
encryptionRemoteKey	<u>47, 48</u>
encryptionStatus	<u>48</u>
deploying	
Avaya Aura Web Gateway OVA	<u>55, 56</u>
multi-node CloudFormation stack	<u>67</u>
single-node CloudFormation stack	<u>63</u>
Solution Deployment Manager	<u>56</u>
supported vSphere clients	<u>51</u>
using vSphere	<u>55</u>
vCenter	<u>52</u>
deployment	
Amazon Web Services	<u>57</u>
VMware	<u>49</u> , <u>51</u>
deployment models	
configuration requirements	<u>23</u>
deployment process	<u>23</u>
deploymentsoftware-only	
AWS	<u>49</u>
VMware	<u>49</u> , <u>51</u>
descriptions	
LDAP parameter	<u>124</u>
diagram	
geographical distribution topology	<u>15</u>
solution architecture	<u>12</u>
topology	<u>13</u>
disabling	
FIPS	<u>95</u>
STIG hardening	<u>96</u>

disk partitioning	<u>32</u>
for software-only deployments	<u>76</u>
DNS configuration	<u>133</u>
documentation center	<u>185</u>
finding content	<u>185</u>
navigation	<u>185</u>
documentation portal	<u>185</u>
finding content	<u>185</u>
navigation	<u>185</u>
document changes	<u>9</u>

Ε

enabling	
additional RPMs for software-only	<u>79</u>
FIPS	<u>94</u>
FIPS for sotware-only systems	<u>80</u>
root access for software-only deployments	<u>91</u>
STIG hardening	<u>96</u>
web socket support for reverse proxy	<u>153</u>
enabling Haveged service	<u>82</u>
encryptionPassphrase	<u>47</u>
encryptionRemoteKey	<u>47, 48</u>
encryptionStatus	<u>48</u>
Equinox conference control	
configuring	<u>134</u>
Equinox Conferencing	
configuration	<u>144</u>
expanding an existing cluster	<u>69</u>
external access configuration	
creating TLS server profile for management interfa	се
	<u>160</u>
external client access configuration	<u>159</u>
external load balancer	
routes configuration	<u>145</u>
external traffic	
configuring rules <u>15</u>	<u>3, 157</u>
rules for multiple FQDNs model	<u>158</u>
rules for single FQDN deployment	<u>154</u>

F

finding content on documentation center	<u>185</u>
FIPS	
additional RPMs for software-only systems	<u>81</u>
disabling	<u>94</u> , <u>95</u>
haveged service	<u>82</u>
installing RPMs for software-only	<u>81</u>
firewall configuration	
for external native clients media support	<u>171</u>
for WebRTC client side TURN support	<u>166</u>
first time login	<u>72</u>
FQDN configuration	<u>133</u>

G

generating	
certificate signing requests	<u>88</u>
generating identity certificate chain 19	<u>)4</u>
geo distribution	
external load balancer3	33
geographical distribution	
overview1	5
topology diagram1	5
topology for a call between data centers1	6
topology for a call within the same data center	8
getting certificates	
third-party CA 18	39
global catalog	_
attributes replication 12	27

Н

haveged	
enabling	
hosts file	
unexpected characters	<u>101</u>

L

identity certficates	<u>193</u>
identity certificate	
generating certificate chain	<u>194</u>
importing	
client certificates to web browsers	<u>197</u>
OVA for AMI conversion	<u>61</u>
importing OVA for conversion	<u>61</u>
InSite Knowledge Base	<u>187</u>
installation	
checklist	. <u>74, 85</u>
on customer-provided physical servers or virtual	
machines	<u>73</u>
installer utility	
cluster configuration	<u>127</u>
installing	
additional RPMs for software-only	<u>79</u>
Avaya Aura Web Gateway	<u>98</u>
certificates on ASBCE	<u>178</u>
RHEL	<u>75</u>
system layer for software-only	<u>82</u>
installing additional nodes	<u>104</u>
installing Avaya Aura Web Gateway	
unexpected characters in hosts	<u>101</u>
installing on AWS	
creating service role	<u>60</u>
internal traffic	
configuring rules	<u>155</u>
rules for single FQDN deployment	<u>156</u>
iOS	
push notifications	<u>19</u>

Κ

key pair	
creating <u>58</u>	

L

LDAP
advanced Configuration Utility settings
Configuration Utility settings 112
global catalog <u>127</u>
multiple authentication and authorization domains123
LDAP parameter
descriptions <u>124</u>
Linux alias commands
load balancer
for AWS software-only installation <u>93</u>
requirements <u>33</u>
routes configuration <u>145</u>
load balancer certificates
AWS deployment <u>65</u>
load monitoring
configuring <u>161</u>
Logging in
EC2 instance

Μ

multiple authentication domains	<u>123</u>
My Docs	<u>185</u>

Ν

networking considerations	
Amazon Web Services	<u>31</u>
New in this release	<u>11</u>
non-root administrative user	
creating	<u>78</u>
NTP service	
checking status	<u>84</u>

0

OAMP configuration	
Linux account	. <u>132</u>
obtaining	
Avaya Aura Web Gateway OVA	<u>51</u>
OpenSSL	. <u>192</u>
optional RPMs	<u>79</u>
OVA	
data encryption field descriptions	<u>53</u>
OVA deployment	<u>51</u>
supported vSphere clients	<u>51</u>
overview	
Avaya Aura Web Gateway	<u>11</u>

Ρ

packages	
RHEL package management	<u>79</u>
password	
changing default password for automatic backups	<u>131</u>
password rules	
configuring	<u>45</u>
supported characters	<u>48</u>
pinging	
System Manager	<u>84</u>
planning	<u>26</u>
preinstallation	<u>26</u>
prerequisites	
certificates	<u>29</u>
FQDN	<u>29</u>
IP addresses	<u>29</u>
system layer installation on AWS	<mark>91</mark>
push notifications	<u>19</u>

R

Red Hat subscription related documentation replacing	<u>79</u> <u>183</u>
seed node	<u>103</u>
required	
skills and knowledge	<u>28</u>
requirements	
configuration requirements for deployment mode	els <u>23</u>
external load balancer	<u>33</u>
VMware	<u>30</u>
resource profile specifications	<u>30</u>
reverse proxy	
configuring certificate authority	<u>152</u>
configuring external traffic rules	
multiple FQDNs deployment	<u>157</u>
single FQDN deployment	<u>153</u>
configuring internal traffic rules	<u>155</u>
configuring TLS server profile	<u>150, 151</u>
configuring web socket support	<u>153</u>
creating security certificate	<u>150, 151</u>
installing Avaya Meetings Management certificat	e <u>180</u>
reverse proxy configuration	<u>148</u>
prerequisites	<u>149</u>
reviewing	
data encryption status	<u>47</u> , <u>48</u>
RHEL	
installing	<u>75</u>
packages	
RSA public and private keys	<u>107</u>

S

searching for content	. 185
seed node	
configuring backup nodes	<u>103</u>

serviceability agents	<u>138</u>
service role	
creating for AWS deployment	60
Session Manager	
configuring registration expiration timer	140
settings	<u></u>
initial AAWG conifugration	108
sharing content	185
signing certificates with System Manager CA	<u>100</u> 177
signing in	<u></u>
Amazon Wob Services Management console	59
allant installation	102
slicht installation	<u>102</u>
SNIIS and knowledge	2 <u>20</u>
SNMP target profile	400
Setting up	<u>139</u>
SNMPV3 user profile	100
assigning	<u>139</u>
setting up	<u>138</u>
software-only	<u>82</u>
additional packages	<u>79</u>
additional RPMs for FIPS	<u>81</u>
Amazon Web Services	
prerequisites for software-only installation	<u>87</u>
Amazon Web Services installation prerequisites	<u>87</u>
AWS installation checklist	<u>85</u>
checklist	
software-only installation on AWS	85
software-only installation on VMware	74
configuring DNS settings	90
creating disk partitioning	76
creating security groups for AWS	
creating target groups	92
disk partitions	76
enabling root access	91
installing RHFL on AWS	<u>01</u> 89
system layer installation	
system layer prerequisites for AWS	<u>02</u> Q1
VMware installation checklist	<u>31</u> 74
software only deployments	<u>74</u> 72
software only installation	<u>73</u>
soliware-only installation	70
creating autimistrative users	<u>70</u>
solution architecture	<u>12</u>
sort documents by last updated	<u>185</u>
special characters	<u>48</u>
specifications	
virtual disk volume	<u>32</u>
SSH connections	
cluster	<u>107</u>
start	
services	<u>131</u>
STIG hardening	
disabling additional hardening options	<u>96</u>
enabling	<u>96</u>
STUN	<u>168</u>
subscription	
Red Hat subscription	<u>7</u> 9
support	<u>18</u> 7

supported vSphere clients	<u>51</u>
sys	36
svs secconfig	37
svs smcvemat	
examples	44
system laver	····· <u>···</u>
commands	36
for software-only	82
secconfig	<u>97</u>
smovemat	12 11
versions	28
velmat	<u>50</u>
	<u>30</u>
System Manager	
configuring registration expiration timer	<u>140</u>
settings	137
Solution Deployment Manager	
svs versions	38
svs volmat	38
eje temigi	<u>00</u>

Т

toract around	02
third-party CA	<u>92</u>
denerating identity certificate chain	10/
generating identity continence chain	<u>194</u> 180
third-party root CA	<u>105</u> 105
TIS client profile	<u>195</u>
creating	101
TI S conver profile	<u>101</u>
resting	101
for alignst aids TUDN	<u>101</u>
for externel netive eliente medie	
for external native clients media	<u>109</u>
for reverse proxy	. <u>150</u> , <u>151</u>
topology diagram	<u>13</u>
call between data centers	<u>16</u>
call within the same data center	<u>18</u>
geographical distribution	<u>15</u>
traffic rules for security groups	
Avaya Aura Web Gateway	<u>88</u>
Web Services load balancer	<u>89</u>
training	<u>186</u>
troubleshooting	
unexpected characters in hosts file	<u>101</u>
TURN	
client side configuration	<u>164</u>
TURN for a WebRTC client	
configuring	<u>168</u>

U

<u>97</u>
<u>143</u>
<u>60</u>
24

utility installer	
certificate configuration	<u>109</u>
front-end host	<u>109</u>

V

vCenter	
videos	<u>186</u>
virtual IP configuration	<u>128</u>
VMware	
requirements	<u>30</u>
vSphere clients	<u>51</u>

W

watch list web browser requirements	. <u>185</u> .22
web deployment service	
uploading Avaya IX Workplace on Device Services	. <u>143</u>
WebRTC	
configuring client side TURN	. <u>164</u>
configuring TURN/STUN profile on ASBCE	. <u>166</u>
web socket	
enabling for reverse proxy	. <u>153</u>